

# Monitoring Microservices and Containerized Applications

Deployment, Configuration, and Best Practices for Prometheus and Alert Manager

Navin Sabharwal Piyush Pandey



# Monitoring Microservices and Containerized Applications

Deployment, Configuration, and Best Practices for Prometheus and Alert Manager

Navin Sabharwal Piyush Pandey

Apress<sup>®</sup>

#### Monitoring Microservices and Containerized Applications

Navin Sabharwal New Delhi, Delhi, India

ISBN-13 (pbk): 978-1-4842-6215-3 https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4842-6216-0 .....

**Pivush Pandev** 

New Delhi, India

ISBN-13 (electronic): 978-1-4842-6216-0

### Copyright © 2020 by Navin Sabharwal, Piyush Pandey

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed.

Trademarked names, logos, and images may appear in this book. Rather than use a trademark symbol with every occurrence of a trademarked name, logo, or image we use the names, logos, and images only in an editorial fashion and to the benefit of the trademark owner, with no intention of infringement of the trademark.

The use in this publication of trade names, trademarks, service marks, and similar terms, even if they are not identified as such, is not to be taken as an expression of opinion as to whether or not they are subject to proprietary rights.

While the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication, neither the authors nor the editors nor the publisher can accept any legal responsibility for any errors or omissions that may be made. The publisher makes no warranty, express or implied, with respect to the material contained herein.

Managing Director, Apress Media LLC: Welmoed Spahr Acquisitions Editor: Celestin Suresh John Development Editor: Matthew Moodie Coordinating Editor: Aditee Mirashi

Cover designed by eStudioCalamar

Cover image designed by Pixabay

Distributed to the book trade worldwide by Springer Science+Business Media New York, 233 Spring Street, 6th Floor, New York, NY 10013. Phone 1-800-SPRINGER, fax (201) 348-4505, email orders-ny@springer-sbm.com, or visit www.springeronline.com. Apress Media, LLC is a California LLC and the sole member (owner) is Springer Science+Business Media Finance Inc (SSBM Finance Inc). SSBM Finance Inc is a **Delaware** corporation.

For information on translations, please e-mail booktranslations@springernature.com; for reprint, paperback, or audio rights, please e-mail bookpermissions@springernature.com.

Apress titles may be purchased in bulk for academic, corporate, or promotional use. eBook versions and licenses are also available for most titles. For more information, reference our Print and eBook Bulk Sales web page at http://www.apress.com/bulk-sales.

Any source code or other supplementary material referenced by the author in this book is available to readers on GitHub via the book's product page, located at www.apress.com/ 978-1-4842-6215-3. For more detailed information, please visit http://www.apress.com/ source-code.

Printed on acid-free paper

# **Table of Contents**

About the Authors	
About the Technical Reviewer	ix
Acknowledgments	xi
Chapter 1: Container Overview	1
Introducing Containers	1
What Are Containers?	3
Evolution of Container Technology	4
Docker and Kubernetes Architecture	6
Master Node	10
Node (Worker) Components	11
Microservices Architecture	12
Container Monitoring Ecosystem Overview	15
Summary	20
Chapter 2: Getting Started with Containers	21
Lab Environment Setup	21
Setting Up Docker CE	23
Setting Up Kubernetes	27
Installing Kubernetes on RHEL 7	27
Add Worker Node to the Kubernetes Master Node	33
Deploying an Application	36
Summary	42

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter 3: Getting Started with Prometheus and Alert Manager	43
Overview of Prometheus	43
Prometheus and Alert Manager Architecture	44
Prometheus and Alert Manager Setup and Configuration	46
Setting Up Prometheus on a Kubernetes Cluster	48
Setting Up Alert Manager	70
Alert Manager and Prometheus Integration	76
Summary	83
Chapter 4: Container Infrastructure Monitoring	85
Container Infrastructure Monitoring Using Parameters	86
Service Discovery	86
Node Availability	87
Node Health	87
Kubernetes Control Plane	87
Kubernetes Infrastructure Services	88
Kubernetes Metrics	88
Labels	89
Helm and Tiller Setup	92
Installing Tiller	93
Exporters	98
Node Exporter	99
cAdvisor Exporter	110
Azure Monitor Exporter	116
Kube Stat Metrics	136
Summary	139

Chapter 5: Working with Prometheus Query Language (PromQL)	
Data in Prometheus	
Getting Started	
Selectors	
Aggregation Example	
Logical and Arithmetic Operators	
Summary	
Chapter 6: Container Reporting & Dashboards	169
Introduction to Container Reporting and Dashboards	
Grafana	
Summary	
Chapter 7: Container Application Monitoring Using Dyna	ntrace183
Introduction to Dynatrace	
Architecture Overview	
Container Monitoring Using Dynatrace	
Containerized Application Deployment	
Monitoring Application using Dynatrace	
Container Metrics on Dynatrace	212
Application Topology	
Transactions and Services	
Summary	
<b>Chapter 8: Container Application Monitoring Using Sysd</b>	lig235
Introduction to Sysdig	235
Container Application Monitoring	237
Sysdig Trial License Setup	240
Elastic Kubernetes Service Setup on AWS	

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Index	
Summary	
Terraform Open Source Installation	283
Jenkins Installation (v2.204.1)	276
Cleaning Up the AWS Environment Namespace	275
Hands-on Exercise for Container Monitoring Automation	275
Container Monitoring Automation	271
Chapter 9: Automation and Orchestration of Container Monitoring	271
Summary	269
Golden Signal Monitoring Using Sysdig	268
Sysdig Topology View	266
Application Performance Metrics in Sysdig	264
Docker Container Metrics	263
Sysdig Navigation	260
EKS Metrics on Sysdig	258
Deploy Sock Shop Application on EKS	256
Sysdig Agent Installation	254

# **About the Authors**



Navin Sabharwal: Navin has more than twenty years of industry experience and is an innovator, thought leader, patent holder, and author in the areas of cloud computing, artificial intelligence and machine learning, public cloud, DevOps, AIOps, infrastructure services, monitoring and management platforms, big data analytics, and software product development. Navin is responsible

for DevOps, artificial intelligence, cloud lifecycle management, service management, monitoring and management, IT Ops analytics, AIOps and machine learning, automation, operational efficiency of scaled delivery through Lean Ops, strategy, and delivery for HCL Technologies. He is reachable at navinsabharwal@gmail.com and https://www.linkedin.com/in/navinsabharwal.

#### ABOUT THE AUTHORS



**Piyush Pandey:** Piyush has more than ten years of industry experience. He is currently working at HCL Technologies as automation architect, delivering solutions catering to hybrid cloud using cloud native and thirdparty solutions. Automation solutions cover use cases like enterprise observability, infra as code, server automation, runbook automation, cloud management platform, cloud native automation, and dashboard/visibility. He is responsible for designing end-to-end solutions

and architecture for enterprise automation adoption. You can reach him at piyushnsitcoep@gmail.com and https://www.linkedin.com/in/piyush-pandey-704495b.

# **About the Technical Reviewer**

Amit Agrawal: Amit is principal data scientist and researcher delivering solutions in field of AI and machine learning. He is responsible for designing end-to-end solutions and architecture for enterprise products. He is reachable at agrawal.amit24@gmail.com and https://www.linkedin.com/in/amit-agrawal-30383425.

# Acknowledgments

To my family, Shweta and Soumil, for being always there by my side and letting me sacrifice their time for my intellectual and spiritual pursuits. For taking care of everything while I am immersed in authoring. This and other accomplishments of my life wouldn't have been possible without your love and support. To my Mom and my sister for the love and support as always, without your blessings nothing is possible.

To my coauthor Piyush, thank you for the hard work and quick turnarounds to deliver this. It was an enriching experience. Also to Siddharth Choudhary & Saurabh Tripathi, thank you for your research input for this book which helped in shaping up practical examples for readers.

To my team here at HCL who has been a source of inspiration with their hard work, ever engaging technical conversations and their technical depth. Your everflowing ideas are a source of happiness and excitement every single day. Piyush Pandey, Sarvesh Pandey, Amit Agrawal, Vasand Kumar, Punith Krishnamurthy, Sandeep Sharma, Amit Dwivedi, Gauarv Bhardwaj, Nitin Narotra, and Vivek thank you for being their and making technology fun.

To Celestine and Aditee and the entire team at Apress for turning our ideas into reality. It has been an amazing experience authoring with you and over the years, the speed of decision making and the editorial support has been excellent.

To all that I have had the opportunity to work with my co-authors, colleagues, managers, mentors and guides, in this world of 7 Billion, it was conincidence that brought us together it was and is an enriching experience to be associated with you and learn from you. All ideas and paths are an assimilation of conversations that I have had and epxeriences I have shared. Thank you.

#### ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Thank you goddess Saraswati, for guiding me to the path of knowledge and spirituality and keep me on this path.

असतो मा साद गमय, तमसो मा ज्योतरि् गमय, मृत्योर मा अमृतम् गमय

(Asato Ma Sad Gamaya, Tamaso Ma Jyotir Gamaya, Mrityor Ma Amritam Gamaya)

Lead us from ignorance to truth, lead us from darkness to light, Lead us from death to immortality.

# **CHAPTER 1**

# **Container Overview**

This first chapter will introduce readers to the world of containers, microservice applications, and their associated monitoring and management tools ecosystem. We will also look into how containers and the ecosystem around them are assembled. The chapter will cover the following topics:

- Introducing Containers
- Evolution of Container Technology
- Docker and Kubernetes Architecture
- Container Monitoring Ecosystem Overview

# **Introducing Containers**

Over the past few years, worldwide digital transformation has accelerated by leaps and bounds, as companies of all sizes find new ways to leverage technology to boost their agility and provide better services to their customers. Fueling this fire is the need to survive in a changing environment. For many companies, an initial step toward digital transformation is modernizing their applications and taking advantage of automated environments in the cloud. Modernization empowers companies with the following:

- **Elasticity:** the ability to respond to spikes in customer demand
- Availability: the ability to serve customers' requests wherever and whenever
- **Agility:** the ability to quickly fix a problem or deploy new functionality that customers want

When cloud computing first started gaining traction among enterprises, one major motivation was cost reduction. Many organizations began to recognize that cloud computing's capability to transform IT offered a vision of infrastructure as a dynamic, self-service-based, and pay-as-you-go consumption of resources that would augment their aspirations to become twenty-first-century business enterprises. Containers are taking the innovations introduced by virtualization and cloud computing to the next level.

Containers provide a portable, consistent, and lightweight software environment for applications to easily run and scale anywhere. Throughout its lifecycle, an application will operate in many different environments, from development to testing, to integration, to preproduction and production. An application may be hosted on either physical infrastructure or virtual on-premises infrastructure, or may be ported to a public cloud infrastructure. Before containers, IT teams had to consider the compatibility restrictions of each new environment and write additional code to ensure the application would function in all the different environments. To solve this problem of portability and to ensure that an application can run irrespective of the changes in underlying infrastructure components, containers were developed to package the application with its dependencies, configuration files, and interfaces allowing developers to use a single image that moves seamlessly between different hosts.

## What Are Containers?

Containers are a way to wrap up an application into its own isolated package. Everything the application requires to run successfully as a process is now captured and executed within the container. A container enables bundling of all application dependencies, like library dependencies, runtimes, and so forth. This allows for the concept of standardization and consistency across environments, as the container will always come pre-loaded with all the pre-requisites/dependencies required to run the application service. Now you can develop the application code on your personal work station and then safely deploy it to run on production infrastructure.

A container is an instance of a container image. A container image is a way to package an app or service (like a snapshot) and then deploy it in a reliable and reproducible way.

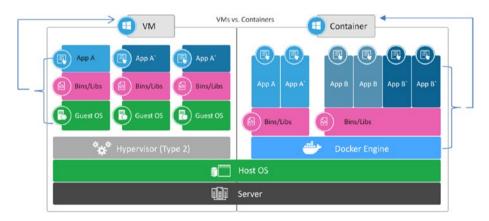


Figure 1-1. Container vs VM comparison

Building applications with containers helps bring in agility for developing, testing, and deploying an application across any cloud. With containers, you can take an app from development to production with little or no code change. However, when you deploy to VMs, you have to either do it manually or use a CI/CD tool with Infra as Code solutions (see Figure 1-1). You might need to perform tasks like modifying configuration items, copying application content between servers, and running interactive setup programs based on application setup, followed by testing. In case of manual setup, this can consume significant time. With an automated setup, the amount of time may be less than that required by the manual approach, but the reduction when a container is used is even more significant. Below Figure 1-1 shows how applications are segregated with a separate Operating System layer and only share the hardware using the hypervisor in virtualization. This also shows how containers are sharing the operating system and there is no separate OS for each application, only the components which are different for each application are deployed separately, the OS image is shared.

# **Evolution of Container Technology**

The earliest computers were typically dedicated to a specific task that might take days or even weeks to run, which is why in the 1960s and through the 1970s there was rise of virtualization technology. VM partitioning is as old as the 1960s, enabling multiple users to access a computer concurrently. The following decades were marked by widespread VM use and development. The modern VM serves a variety of purposes, such as installing multiple operating systems on one machine to enable it to host multiple applications with specific, unique OS requirements that differ from each other.

In 1979, the chroot system call was introduced, which allowed one to change the root directory of a process and its children to a new location in the file system. Chroot was a significant step toward the rise of containers, as it allowed process isolation by restricting an application's file access to a specific directory. This helped improve system security.

Introduced in 2001, Linux VServer is an operating system virtualization technology that is implemented by patching the Linux kernel. In 2004, the first public beta of Solaris Containers was released; it combined system resource controls and boundary separation provided by zones. Process containers, or control groups (cgroups), were introduced by Google in 2006 and were designed for limiting, accounting for, and isolating the resource usage (CPU, memory, disk I/O, network) of a collection of processes.

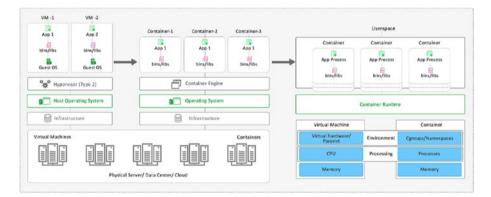
LXC (LinuX Containers) was the first mature implementation of Linux Container Manager. It was implemented in 2008 using cgroups and Linux namespaces.

Finally, Docker emerged in 2013, which led to a tectonic shift in the way applications are designed, developed, and deployed. Docker built its foundation on two systems, LXC and libcontainers. Libcontainers came from LMCTFY, which was an open source container stack where applications created and managed their own subcontainers. Docker also used LXC in its initial stages and later replaced that container manager with its own library, libcontainer. In addition to building on previous software, Docker had an easy-to-use GUI and was capable of running multiple applications with different requirements on a single OS.

Container technology's momentum continued in 2017 with the introduction of Kubernetes, which is a highly effective container orchestration technology. Container technology ramped up over the next few years as multiple players, such as Openshift, Pivotal, Azure, Google, AWS, and even Docker, changed gears to support the open source Kubernetes container scheduler and orchestration tool, making it the most popular and widely used container orchestration technology. In 2017, Microsoft enabled organizations to run Linux containers on Windows servers, which was a major development for Microsoft-based businesses that wanted to containerize applications and stay compatible with their existing systems.

# **Docker and Kubernetes Architecture**

Containers are a way of packaging software, mainly the application's code, libraries, and dependencies. Containers group and isolate a set of processes and resources, such as memory, CPU, disk, and so forth, from the host and any other containers. The isolation ensures that any processes inside the container cannot see any processes or resources outside the container. Containers typically leverage Linux kernel features like namespaces (ipc, uts, mount, pid, network, and user) and cgroups, which provide an abstraction layer on top of an existing kernel instance, thus creating isolated environments similar to virtual machines.



*Figure 1-2.* Container architecture with respect to physical and virtual infrastructure

Docker is a container-based technology where containers share the host OS kernel by using Linux kernel features like namespaces and control groups. Docker is available in two versions: Docker Community Edition (CE) and Docker Enterprise Edition (EE). Docker EE is designed for enterprise adoption and is recommended over Docker CE for running containerized business-critical applications in production. Docker architecture is based on client-server architecture (Figure 1-3). The Docker client interacts with the Docker daemon, which in turn manages the lifecycle of the container from building and running to scaling.

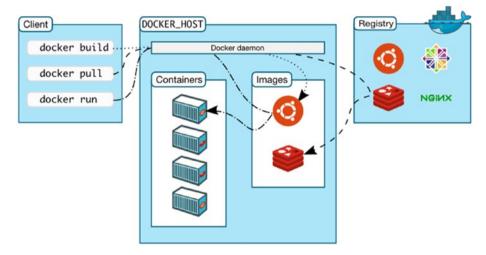


Figure 1-3. Docker architecture

- **Docker client:** Docker users can interact with Docker through a client.
- **Docker host:** The Docker host provides a base environment in which to run containerized applications. It provides all the necessary infrastructure base components right from the Docker daemon: images, containers, networks, and storage.
- **Docker images:** Docker images are equivalent to an OS template or an image, with the difference being that instead of packaging the OS it contains the application source code along with all the dependencies required to run the application. Using these images, we can achieve application portability across infrastructure without worrying about the underlying technologies used.

- **Registries:** Registries are used for managing Docker images. There are two major registry types: public and private.
- **Docker engine:** The Docker engine enables developing, packaging, deploying, and running applications.
- **Docker daemon:** Docker daemon is the core process that manages Docker images, containers, networks, and storage volumes.
- **Docker Engine REST API:** This is the API used by containerized applications to interact with the Docker daemon.
- **Docker CLI:** This provides a command line interface for interacting with the Docker daemon (Figure 1-4).

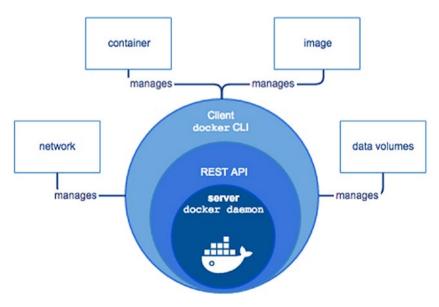


Figure 1-4. Docker management interfaces (CLI & API)

Kubernetes is an open-source container management (orchestration) tool that provides an abstraction layer over the container to manage the container fleets leveraging REST APIs. Kubernetes is portable in nature and is supported to run on various public or private cloud platforms, such as Physical Server, GCP, AWS, Azure, OpenStack, or Apache Mesos.

Similar to Docker, Kubernetes follows a client–server architecture. It has a master server, which could be one or more than one, that is used to manage target nodes where containerized applications are deployed. It also has the feature of service discovery.

The master server consists of various components, including a kubeapiserver, an etcd storage, a kube-controller-manager, a cloud-controllermanager, a kube-scheduler, and a DNS server for Kubernetes services. Node components include Kubelet and kube-proxy (Figure 1-5).

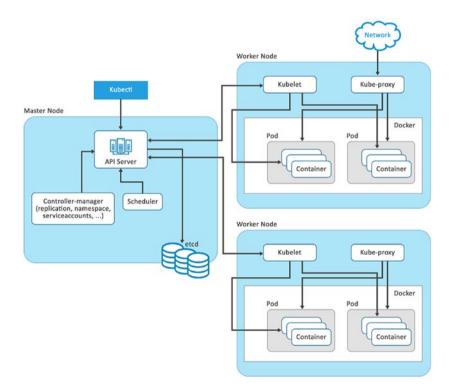


Figure 1-5. Kubernetes architecture

# **Master Node**

The following are the main components on the master node:

- *etcd cluster*: etcd cluster is a distributed key-value storage used to store Kubernetes cluster data (such as number of pods, their state, namespace, etc.), API objects, and service discovery details.
- *kube-apiserver*: Kubernetes API server provides a programmatic interface for container management activities (like pods, services, replication sets/ controllers) using REST APIs.
- *kube-controller-manager*: kube-controller-manager is used for managing controller processes like Node Controller (for monitoring and responding to node health), Replication Controller (for maintaining number of pods), Endpoints Controller (for service and pod integration), and Service Account/Token Controller (for API/token access management ).
- *cloud-controller-manager*: cloud-controller-manager is responsible for managing controller processes that interact with the underpinning cloud provider.
- kube-scheduler: kube-scheduler helps with managing pod placement across target nodes based on resource utilization. It takes into account resource requirements, hardware/software/security policy, affinity specifications, etc., before deciding on the best node for running the pod.

## Node (Worker) Components

The following are the main components on a (worker) node:

- *Kubelet*: Kubelet is the agent component running on a worker node, and its main purpose is to ensure containers are running in the pod. Any containers that are outside the management of Kubernetes are not managed by Kubelet. It ensures that workers, pods, and their containers are in a healthy state, as well as reports these metrics back to the Kubernetes master node.
- *kube-proxy*: kube-proxy is a proxy service that runs on the worker node to manage inter-pod networking and communication. It's also a crucial component for service concept realization.
- **Kubectl:** kubectl is a command line tool used for Kubernetes cluster management and uses APIs exposed by kube-apiserver.
- Pod: A pod is a logical collection of one or more containers that formulates a single application and is represented as a running process on worker nodes. A pod packages application containers, storage, network and other configurations required for running containers. A pod can horizontally scale out and enable application deployment strategies like rolling updates and blue/green deployment, which aim to minimize application downtime and risk during upgrades.
- **Service:** A service provides an interface for the collection of one or more pods bound by policy. Since a pod's lifecycle is ephemeral in nature, services help to ensure application access without worrying even if a backend pod dies abruptly.

- **Namespace:** A namespace is a logical construct used for dividing cluster resources across multiple users. You can use resource quotas with a namespace to manage resource consumption by multiple application teams.
- **Deployment:** Deployment represents a collection of one or more running pods that formulate an application as per the pod specification. It works closely with Deployment Controller to ensure the pod is available as per the user specification mentioned in the pod specification.

## **Microservices Architecture**

Microservices architecture is an approach to building an application using a set of small services. Each service runs in its own process and communicates with other processes. Each microservice represents a functionality that can now be developed, deployed, and managed independently. Each of these smaller services has its individual data model, logic, data storage technologies (SQL, NoSQL), and programming language.

Additionally, microservices can now scale out independently, meaning you can scale out a specific service instead of the entire application based on utilization patterns. This approach helps organizations save money on infrastructure components that may remain unutilized in the traditional monolithic application world (Figure 1-6).

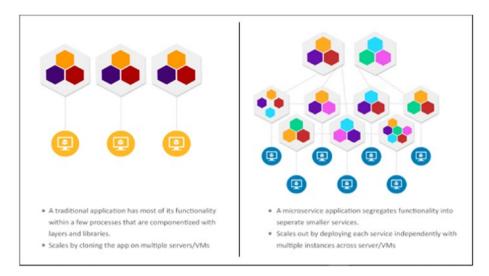


Figure 1-6. Monolithic vs microservice application comparison

Containers are pretty much the accepted norm for managing microservice architectures. That's true for hosted services that have adopted Kubernetes and offer services based on a container infrastructure. It's also true for organizations that increasingly use containers to manage their workloads and adapt to new market conditions. Advancements in container technology ecosystems are opening new avenues of monitoring. For example, service mesh technologies, when paired with Kubernetes, enable traffic management, service identity, policy enforcement, and telemetry for microservices.

Monitoring and health management of application services and infrastructure is an important aspect of operational stability, especially for the production environment.

Health monitoring allows near-real-time visibility into the state of your application services, pods, containers, and underlying infrastructure. Microservices-based applications often leverage health checks to keep track of application availability, performance, faults, etc. Table 1-1 shows the monitoring areas to be considered for microservices-based applications.

## Table 1-1. Monitoring Areas

Architecture	Metric Selection Decision Logic	Sample Metrics
<b>Microservice</b> In general, there is one process to track per container.	Where are the new services deployed? What percentage of time is the service reachable? How many requests are enqueued?	Average percentage of time a request- servicing thread is busy. Number of enqueued requests. Percentage of time a service is reachable
Application Multiple microservices running simultaneously constitute an application	Does the database respond quickly? Are the message queues fast enough? How does heap memory usage change over time? Are application services responsive?	Query execution frequency, response time, and failure rate. Response time, failure rate
Container Separate from the underlying process being run within it, containers are also monitored Container Cluster	How responsive are the processes within container? Which images have been deployed? Are specific containers associated with over-utilization of host? Are your clusters healthy and	CPU throttle time. Container disk I/O. Memory usage. Network (volume, dropped packets) Percentage of
Multiple containers deployed to run as group. Many of the metrics of individual containers can also be summarized.	properly sized? Can applications be effectively run on fewer nodes?	clusters remaining operational compared to those originally deployed

(continued)

Architecture	Metric Selection Decision Logic	Sample Metrics
Host Also called a node, multiple hosts can support a cluster of containers	Do changes in utilization indicate a problem with a process or application?	Percentage of total memory capacity in use. Percentage of time CPUs are utilized
Infrastructure Cloud in which hosts are running	How much does it cost to run each service or deployment? What is the ratio of microservices and/or containers per instance?	Network traffic Utilization of databases, storage, and other shared services
<b>End user</b> The users using the application or other applications using APIs.	What is the average web/ transaction response time experienced by users or by target application?	Response time. Number and percentage of failed user actions/ transactions

### Table 1-1. (continued)

# **Container Monitoring Ecosystem Overview**

With the rise of container technology, there was a requirement to have a supporting ecosystem via which enterprises could run mission-critical workloads on the container. With the introduction of container technology and microservices architecture, monitoring solutions now need to manage data for both non-ephemeral and ephemeral services. Collecting data from applications composed of so many services has now become vastly complex. In a DevOps world, monitoring containerized applications and environments is not just needed for the operations team but also as a feedback mechanism for developers to understand their application

performance bottlenecks/faults/bugs/etc. The following are the nuances to be considered when it comes to container monitoring:

- Short lifespan of containers: Containers are constantly provisioned and decommissioned based on demand. This can lead to cycles, where in the morning a container host cluster is filled up with microservices belonging to Workload A, while in the afternoon this same host is serving Application B. This means that a security breach, slow performance, or downtime on a certain host will have a very different business impact depending on when it happens.
- One microservice can be leveraged by numerous applications: As different applications often share the same microservices, monitoring tools must be able to dynamically map which instance of a microservice impacts which application.
- **Temporary nature of containers:** When the assembly of a new container is triggered based on a container image, networking connections, storage resources, and integration with other required services have to be instantly provided. This dynamic provisioning can impact the performance of related and unrelated infrastructure components.
- More levels to watch: In the case of Kubernetes, enterprise IT needs to monitor at the level of nodes (host servers), pods (host clusters), and individual containers. In addition, monitoring has to happen on the VM and storage levels, as well as on the microservices level.

- Different container management frameworks: Amazon EC2 Container Services run on Amazon's proprietary management platform, while Google naturally supports Kubernetes (so does VMware), and Docker supports Swarm. Container monitoring solutions need to be aware of the differences between these container management platforms.
- Microservices change fast and often: Anomaly detection for microservices-based applications is much more difficult than that for standard apps, as apps consisting of microservices are constantly changing. New microservices are added to the app and existing ones are updated in a very quick sequence, leading to different infrastructure usage patterns. The monitoring tool needs to be able to differentiate between "normal" usage patterns caused by intentional changes and actual anomalies that have to be addressed.

Per Host Metrics Explosion			
Component	# of Metrics for a Traditional Stack	for 10 Container Cluster with 1 Underlying Host	for 10 Container Cluster with 1 Underlying Host
Operating System	100	100	200
Orchestrator	n/a	50	50
Container	n/a	500 (50 per container)	5,000 (50 per container)
Application	50	500 (50 per container)	5,000 (50 per container)
Total # of Metrics	150	1,150	10,250

*Figure 1-7. Metrics explosion view with container technology evolution* 

In order to have complete visibility of containerized applications, you need to have data from the various components that formulate the base infrastructure for running containers. This means you need to monitor the following:

- Application services
- Pods and containers
- Clusters running the containers
- Network for service/pod/cluster communication
- Host OS/machine running the cluster

Choosing the right monitoring toolset is certainly important and should be based upon the pros and cons of the solution. The following are the options available in the market for container monitoring:

- **Prometheus:** Prometheus is one of the oldest and most popular open source container monitoring solutions available. It's a graduated cloud native computing foundation (CNCF) project that offers powerful querying capabilities, visualization, and alerting.
- **Grafana:** Grafana is a popular reporting dashboarding tool for container environments. It has the capability to leverage data feeds from Prometheus and other sources for visualizing information from the Kubernetes environment.
- cAdvisor: cAdvisor is another container resource monitoring tool that works at the worker node level instead of the pod level. It has the capability to discover all the containers running on worker nodes and to provide metrics about CPU, memory, filesystem, etc. This solution does not provide long-term storage of metric data or analytics services on top, which would be useful for driving insights for the operations team.

- **Heapster:** Heapster aggregates monitoring data across multiple nodes using Kubelet and cAdvisor at the backend. Unlike cAdvisor, Heapster works at the pod level instead of the worker node level.
- **Sysdig:** Sysdig Monitor helps in monitoring container applications by providing end-to-end visibility—from application service to pod to container to node level— of the availability, performance, and faults across multiple container technologies and clouds.
- **Dynatrace:** Dynatrace has a new suite of tools available for container monitoring and alerting. Leveraging an agent-based approach, it can discover and fetch data about containerized application services, pods, containers, worker nodes, etc.
- **AppDynamics:** Application and business performance software that collects data from agents installed on the host using Docker APIs.
- Fluentd: Open source data collector for unified logging layers.
- **Collectd:** A small daemon that periodically collects system information and provides mechanisms to store and monitor container metrics.
- **Cloud native:** Leading cloud providers like AWS (Cloudwatch), Azure (Azure Monitor), and Google Cloud (Stackdriver) have their own native mechanisms to monitor container ecosystems on AWS EKS, Azure AKS, and Google GKE.

# Summary

In this chapter, we have seen the container ecosystem evolution, Docker and Kubernetes architecture, and the benefits and challenges of container technology. We have also looked at monitoring and management tools and metrics for effective container monitoring. In the next chapter, we will start with practical exercises to set up Docker and Kubernetes, and we will end with deploying our first containerized application to kickstart the container monitoring journey.

# **CHAPTER 2**

# Getting Started with Containers

This chapter will provide hands-on steps for installing Docker and Kubernetes. We also look into how to deploy a containerized application on Kubernetes. This will set us up for the following chapters, where we will monitor this setup using Prometheus. This chapter will cover the following topics:

- Setting Up Docker CE and Running First Container
- Setting Up Kubernetes
- Deploying the Sample Application

# Lab Environment Setup

For our lab environment, we will be using two Redhat 7 virtual machines (VMs). We recommend that readers use at minimum two CPUs, 8 GB RAM, and 80 GB hard disk (under/location) for the exercises here in Chapter 2. VMs can be hosted on VMware Workstation, VMware, Hyper V, or a public cloud like AWS, Azure, or GCP. Kindly ensure both VMs are able to communicate with each other on a private IP address and have outbound internet connectivity to download packages for installation.

Figure 2-1 represents the lab environment we will be setting up as part of this chapter.

#### CHAPTER 2 GETTING STARTED WITH CONTAINERS

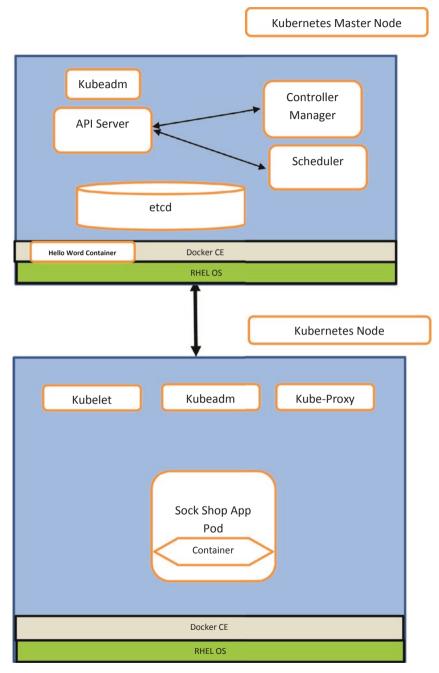


Figure 2-1. Lab environnement setup for Chapter 2

As part of this chapter, we will be performing the following steps:

- We will begin with installation of Docker CE engine on two nodes.
- After Docker CE engine setup, we will run a "Hello World" sample on the master Kubernetes node to validate our setup.
- We will install the core Kubernetes components on the master node using the Kubeadm utility.
- We will install Kubernetes components on the worker/ target node.
- We will join the worker/target node with the master node.
- Finally, we will deploy the containerized application Sock-shop on the worker/target node.

# **Setting Up Docker CE**

To start with container monitoring using Prometheus and Alert Manager, the first step will be to set up the container ecosystem. We will set up Docker CE 18.09.0 on both of our Redhat VMs. This will serve as the container engine for our applications.

**Note** Please make sure all the commands mentioned in Steps 1 through 8 are executed successfully on both Redhat VMs. Steps 9 and 10 will be only executed on the master node.

#### CHAPTER 2 GETTING STARTED WITH CONTAINERS

 SSH into Redhat VMs. We will begin with cleaning up any older version of Docker (if any) present on the system. It is recommended to clean any pre-existing installation in case readers are using existing VMs for this exercise. If readers are using fresh VMs then kindly proceed to Step 2.

\$ sudo yum remove docker docker-common dockerselinux docker-engine-selinux

2. Execute the following command to install prerequisite packages for Docker CE. The yum-configmanager utility is used to manage the main yum configuration options like enabling/disabling/ adding repositories. device-mapper-persistentdata and lvm2 are needed for the device mapper storage driver. The device mapper storage driver for containers enables capabilities like thin provisioning and snapshotting, which are useful for image and container management.

\$ sudo yum install -y yum-utils device-mapperpersistent-data lvm2

3. Configure the docker-ce repo by executing the following command:

\$ sudo yum-config-manager --add-repo https://
download.docker.com/linux/centos/docker-ce.repo

Docker CE repo configuration will occur after the execution of the preceding command. It will save the repo under \_/etc/yum.repos.d/docker-ce. repo as mentioned in Figure 2-2.

```
[root@devops0088 ~]$ yum-config-manager --add-repo https://download.docker.com/linux/centos/docker-ce.repo
Loaded plugins: langpacks, product-id, subscription-manager
adding repo from: https://download.docker.com/linux/centos/docker-ce.repo
grabbing file https://download.docker.com/linux/centos/docker-ce.repo to /etc/yum.repos.d/docker-ce.repo
repo saved to /etc/yum.repos.d/docker-ce.repo
```

#### Figure 2-2. Docker CE repo configuration

4. Execute the following command to update the yum cache. This will ensure yum configuration is updated as per the command executed in the previous step.

\$ sudo yum makecache fast

5. Run the following command for SELinux policies for container runtimes. This package is needed for setting up container SELinux policy on Redhat systems. This is required to setup the security policies for Docker containers to access and share the resources.

\$ sudo yum install -y http://mirror.centos.
org/centos/7/extras/x86\_64/Packages/containerselinux-2.107-3.el7.noarch.rpm

The SELinux policy gets updated after the execution of the preceding command.

6. Run the following command to install Docker community edition:

\$ sudo yum install docker-ce-18.09.0-3.el7 -y

Installation of Docker CE is completed after the execution of the preceding command.

7. Run the following command to enable the Docker service:

\$ sudo systemctl enable docker.service

Enable the service of Docker after executing the preceding command.

- 8. Execute the following commands to start and then validate the status of Docker service (see Figure 2-3):
  - \$ sudo systemctl start docker.service
  - \$ sudo systemctl status docker.service

```
[root@devops0088 ~] $ sudo systemctl status docker.service
• docker.service - Docker Application Container Engine
Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/system/docker.service; enabled; vendor preset: disabled)
Active: active (running) since Wed 2019-10-30 15:37:28 IST; l6s ago
Docs: https://docs.docker.com
Main PID: 20937 (dockerd)
Tasks: 10
Memory: 42.1M
CGroup: /system.slice/docker.service
L20937 /usr/bin/dockerd -H fd:// --containerd=/run/containerd/containerd.sock
```

# *Figure 2-3. Start and verify Docker CE service. Look for the active (running) status of the docker service*

9. Pull the Docker image from Docker Hub by executing the following command. Docker Hub is a service provided by Docker for searching and sharing container images. Docker Hub provides repositories with access to push and pull container images. Additionally, Docker Hub provides official images managed by Docker and publisher images managed by external vendors.

\$ docker pull hello-world

 Now, let's validate our installation of the Docker Engine by running the first Docker container on our master node. Execute the following command after logging in to the master node. You can verify the installation as shown in Figure 2-4.

```
$ docker run hello-world
```

```
[root@devops0088 ~] # docker run hello-world
Hello from Docker!
This message shows that your installation appears to be working correctly.
To generate this message, Docker took the following steps:
 1. The Docker client contacted the Docker daemon.
 2. The Docker daemon pulled the "hello-world" image from the Docker Hub.
    (amd64)
 3. The Docker daemon created a new container from that image which runs the
    executable that produces the output you are currently reading.
 4. The Docker daemon streamed that output to the Docker client, which sent it
    to your terminal.
To try something more ambitious, you can run an Ubuntu container with:
 $ docker run -it ubuntu bash
Share images, automate workflows, and more with a free Docker ID:
 https://hub.docker.com/
For more examples and ideas, visit:
 https://docs.docker.com/get-started/
```

Figure 2-4. Running first Docker container

If you see the response as "Hello from the Docker!" the Docker container is running successfully.

## **Setting Up Kubernetes**

The following steps elaborate the commands needed to set up Kubernetes master and worker nodes. In the previous section, we set up Docker Engine on both nodes.

## **Installing Kubernetes on RHEL 7**

Let's start:

 Disable SELinux and set up firewall rules on the master node. Setting SELinux in permissive mode effectively disables it and thereby enables containers to access the host filesystem. The br\_netfilter and net. bridge.bridge-nf-call-iptables modules are used for setting up Kubernetes networking options. Navigate to the Kubernetes master node and execute the following commands to set the hostname and disable SELinux:

```
$ hostnamectl set-hostname 'k8s-master'
$ exec bash
$ setenforce 0
$ sed -i --follow-symlinks 's/SELINUX=enforcing/
SELINUX=disabled/g' /etc/sysconfig/selinux
```

```
~]$ hostnamectl set-hostname 'k8s-master'
~]$ exec bash
~]$ setenforce 0
~]$ sed -i --follow-symlinks 's/SELINUX=enforcing/SELINUX=disabled/g'
/etc/sysconfig/selinux
```

Figure 2-5. SELinux policy update

Set the following firewall rules on your master node by executing the following commands:

```
firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=6443/tcp
firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=2379-2380/tcp
firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=10250/tcp
firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=10252/tcp
firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=10255/tcp
firewall-cmd --reload
modprobe br_netfilter
echo '1' > /proc/sys/net/bridge/bridge-nf-call-iptables
```

Table 2-1 lists the relevance of the inbound TCP ports enabled on the master node. See Figure 2-6.

Port Range	Purpose
6443*	These ports are used for Kubernetes API access.
2379-2380	These ports are used for etcd server client API.
10250	This port is used for Kubelet API.
10251	This port is used for kube-scheduler.
10252	This port is used for kube-controller-manager.

Table 2-1. Ports required for Kubernetes

```
[root@k8s-master ~] # firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=6443/tcp
success
[root@k8s-master ~] # firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=2379-2380/tcp
success
[root@k8s-master ~] # firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=10250/tcp
success
[root@k8s-master ~] # firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=10251/tcp
success
[root@k8s-master ~] # firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=10252/tcp
success
[root@k8s-master ~] # firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=10255/tcp
success
[root@k8s-master ~] # firewall-cmd --reload
success
[root@k8s-master ~] # modprobe br netfilter
[root@k8s-master ~] # echo 'l' > /proc/sys/net/bridge/bridge-nf-call-iptables
```

Figure 2-6. Firewall policy update

**Note** In the absence of a DNS server in your lab environment, you need to update the /etc/hosts file on the master and worker nodes manually with entries as depicted below.

- <Master node IP > k8s-master
- <Worker node IP > worker-node1

For example, in our environment, the hosts file had the following entries on both servers (see Figure 2-7).

```
10.1.150.126 k8s-master
10.1.150.150 worker-node1
```

Figure 2-7. /etc/hosts file entry sample

2. Configure the Kubernetes repository on the master node. Execute the following command to configure the repositories needed for Kubernetes installation:

```
cat <<EOF > /etc/yum.repos.d/kubernetes.repo
[kubernetes]
name=Kubernetes
baseurl=https://packages.cloud.google.com/yum/repos/
kubernetes-el7-x86_64
enabled=1
gpgcheck=1
repo_gpgcheck=1
gpgkey=https://packages.cloud.google.com/yum/doc/yum-
key.gpg https://packages.cloud.google.com/yum/doc/rpm-
package-key.gpg
EOF
```

3. Install Kubeadm on the master node (Figure 2-8). This will be used to deploy Kubernetes components in an automated fashion on the master and worker/ target nodes. Execute the following command to install kubeadm: \$ yum install kubeadm -y
Start and enable kubectl service by executing below
command

\$systemctl restart kubelet && systemctl enable kubelet
\$systemctl status kubelet

```
systemctl restart kubelet && systemctl enable kubelet
systemctl status kubelet
kubelet.service - kubelet: The Kubernetes Node Agent
Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/kubelet.service; enabled; vendor preset: disabled)
Drop-In: /usr/lib/systemd/system/kubelet.service.d
Lo-kubeadm.conf
Active: active (running) since Wed 2020-05-13 19:01:02 IST; 2min 31s ago
Docs: https://kubernetes.io/docs/
```

#### Figure 2-8. Kubeadm installation

4. Execute the following command to initialize Kubernetes kubeadm on the master node:

```
$sudo swapoff -a
$sudo sed -i '/ swap / s/^\(.*\)$/#\1/g' /etc/fstab
$kubeadm init
```

Execute the following commands to use the cluster as a root user:

\$mkdir -p \$HOME/.kube
\$cp -i /etc/kubernetes/admin.conf \$HOME/.kube/config
\$chown \$(id -u):\$(id -g) \$HOME/.kube/config

5. Deploy the pod network to the cluster on the master node.

Run the following command to get the status of the cluster and pods (Figure 2-9):

\$kubectl get nodes
\$kubectl get pods --all-namespaces

[root@k8s-ma	ster ~] # kubectl get nod	es				
NAME	STATUS ROLES AGE	VERSION				
k8s-master	NotReady master 13m	vl.16.2				
[root@k8s-ma	ster ~] # kubectl get pod	sall-namesp	aces			
NAMESPACE	NAME		READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
kube-system	coredns-5644d7b6d9-mwh	bf	0/1	Pending	0	13m
kube-system	coredns-5644d7b6d9-vkqgq		0/1	Pending	0	13m
kube-system	etcd-k8s-master		1/1	Running	0	12m
kube-system	kube-apiserver-k8s-mas	ter	1/1	Running	0	12m
kube-system	kube-controller-manager-k8s-master		1/1	Running	0	12m
kube-system	kube-proxy-57kfh		1/1	Running	0	13m
kube-system	-system kube-scheduler-k8s-master		1/1	Running	0	12m

Figure 2-9. List Kubernetes nodes and namespaces

Execute the following commands to deploy the network (Figure 2-10):

\$export kubever=\$(kubectl version | base64 | tr -d '\n')
\$kubectl apply -f "https://cloud.weave.works/k8s/net?k8sversion=\$kubever"

```
[root&k8s-master ~] # kubectl apply -f "https://cloud.weave.works/k8s/net?k8s-version=$kubever"
serviceaccount/weave-net created
clusterrole.rbac.authorization.k8s.io/weave-net created
clusterrolebinding.rbac.authorization.k8s.io/weave-net created
role.rbac.authorization.k8s.io/weave-net created
rolebinding.rbac.authorization.k8s.io/weave-net created
daemonset.apps/weave-net created
```

#### Figure 2-10. Kubernetes network deployment

Execute the following command to get the status of the cluster and pods; this time, the statuses should come as "Ready" and "Running" states, respectively (Figure 2-11).

```
$kubectl get nodes
$kubectl get pods --all-namespaces
```

[root@k8s-ma	ster ~] # k	ubectl get no	odes				
NAME	STATUS	ROLES AGE	VERSION				
k8s-master	Ready	master 21m	vl.16.2				
[root@k8s-ma:	ster ~] # k	ubectl get pa	odsall-names	paces			
NAMESPACE	NAME			READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
kube-system	coredns-	5644d7b6d9-m	whbf	1/1	Running	0	21m
kube-system	coredns-	5644d7b6d9-v	kada	1/1	Running	0	21m
kube-system	etcd-k8s	-master		1/1	Running	0	20m
kube-system	kube-api	server-k8s-ma	aster	1/1	Running	0	20m
kube-system	kube-con	troller-manad	ger-k8s-master	1/1	Running	0	20m
kube-system	kube-pro	xy-57kfh		1/1	Running	0	21m
kube-system	kube-sch	eduler-k8s-ma	aster	1/1	Running	0	20m
kube-system	weave-ne	t-dxfqc		2/2	Running	0	2m47s

Figure 2-11. List Kubernetes nodes and namespaces

## Add Worker Node to the Kubernetes Master Node

Now, we'll add a worker node:

- 1. Update the /etc/hosts file on the worker node (10.1.150.150):
  - <Master node IP > k8s-master1
  - <Worker node IP > worker-node1

For example, in our environment the hosts file had the following entries on the worker node (Figure 2-12):

10.1.150.126 k8s-master 10.1.150.150 worker-node1

Figure 2-12. /etc/hosts file entry sample

2. Disable SELinux and configure the firewall rules on the worker node:

```
$setenforce 0
$sed -i --follow-symlinks 's/SELINUX=enforcing/
SELINUX=disabled/g' /etc/sysconfig/selinux
$firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=10250/tcp
$firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=30000-32767/tcp
$firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=6783/tcp
$firewall-cmd --reload
$echo '1' > /proc/sys/net/bridge/bridge-nf-call-iptables
```

Table 2-2 lists the relevance of each inbound TCP port on the worker/target node (see Figure 2-13).

Table 2-2. Port ranges required for Kubernetes

Port Range	Purpose
10250	This port is used by the Kubelet API.
30000-32767	This port is used by NodePort Services.

```
[root@devops0088 -]$ setenforce 0
[root@devops0088 -]$ set = --follow-symlinks 's/SELINUX=enforcing/SELINUX=disabled/g' /etc/sysconfig/selinux
[root@devops0088 -]$ firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=10255/tcp
success
[root@devops0088 -]$ firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=30000-32767/tcp
success
[root@devops0088 -]$ firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port=6783/tcp
success
[root@devops0088 -]$ firewall-cmd --reload
success
[root@devops0088 -]$ firewall-cmd --reload
success
[root@devops0088 -]$ firewall-cmd --reload
success
```

Figure 2-13. SELinux and firewall policy update

3. Configure Kubernetes repositories on the worker node (10.1.150.150)(Figure 2-14):

cat <<EOF > /etc/yum.repos.d/kubernetes.repo
[kubernetes]
name=Kubernetes
baseurl=https://packages.cloud.google.com/yum/repos/
kubernetes-el7-x86\_64
enabled=1
gpgcheck=1
repo\_gpgcheck=1
gpgkey=https://packages.cloud.google.com/yum/doc/
yum-key.gpg https://packages.cloud.google.com/
yum/doc/rpm-package-key.gpg
EOF

```
[root&devops0088 -]# cat <<EOF > /etc/yum.repos.d/kubernetes.repo
> [kubernetes]
> name=Kubernetes
> baseurl=https://packages.cloud.google.com/yum/repos/kubernetes-e17-x86_64
> enabled*
> gpgcheck=1
> repo_gpgcheck=1
> repo_gpgcheck=1
> gpgckerttps://packages.cloud.google.com/yum/doc/rym-package-key.gpg
```

#### Figure 2-14. Kubernetes repository configuration

4. Install kubeadm on worker node(10.1.150.150).

Execute the following command to install kubeadm:

\$install kubeadm -y

Then start and enable the kubectl service:

\$systemctl restart kubelet && systemctl enable kubelet

5. Join the worker node (10.1.1.50.150) to the master node (10.1.150.126) using the token ID. Navigate to Kubernetes master (10.1.150.126) and fetch the token by executing the following command:

\$kubeadm token list

Execute the following command in the worker node (10.1.1.50.150):

```
$sudo swapoff -a
$sudo sed -i '/ swap / s/^\(.*\)$/#\1/g' /etc/fstab
$kubeadm join --token ahh26d.8sl6ey119h4eaw17
10.1.150.126:6443 --discovery-token-unsafe-skip-
ca-verification
```

Run the kubectl get nodes command on the master node (101.1.150.126) to see the worker node machine join (Figure 2-15):

\$kubectl get nodes

[root@k8s-ma	aster ~]#	kubectl	get nodes	
NAME	STATUS	ROLES	AGE	VERSION
devops0088	Ready	<none></none>	3m53s	vl.16.2
k8s-master	Ready	master	91m	vl.16.2

#### Figure 2-15. List Kubernetes nodes

Kubernetes master and worker nodes are configured successfully.

# **Deploying an Application**

Now that we have our container ecosystem ready, it's time to deploy our first application. We will deploy a microservice-based application called Sock Shop (Figure 2-16).

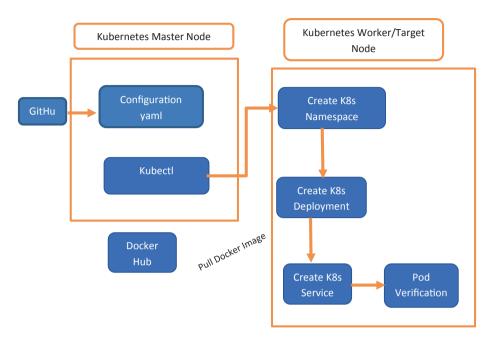


Figure 2-16. Sock Shop application deployment flow

The following is the flow for the Sock Shop application deployment we will follow in this chapter:

- 1. We will first clone the configuration scripts for Sock Shop from GitHub.
- 2. We will then use Kubectl to create a namespace on the worker/target node and then deploy the configuration as a pod.
- 3. We will then create a service for our application for end-user access.
- 4. Finally, we will test the status of our application using command line and web browser access.

**Note** We will cover the basics of the configuration script in the next chapter in detail, as readers need to understand the file structure before using it to deploy Prometheus and Alert Manager.

Log in to the Kubernetes master node (10.1.150.126) using SSH.

 First, we need to set up Git on the master node (10.1.150.126). Log in to the master node with root user and execute the following command:

\$ yum install git

When prompt asks "Is this ok [y/d/N]", Text "Y" and press Enter key (Figure 2-17).

```
Transaction Summary
```

```
Install 1 Package (+3 Dependent packages)
Total download size: 4.5 M
Installed size: 22 M
Is this ok [y/d/N]: y
```

#### Figure 2-17. Install Git

Check that Git installed successfully by executing the following command:

\$ git version

You will get a result like that in Figure 2-18, which means Git was installed successfully.

```
[root@devops0088 ~]# git version
git version 1.8.3.1
```

Figure 2-18. Verify Git version

 Clone the Sock Shop application from GitHub from the following URL into the /home/prometheus folder. You will see a microservices-demo folder after command execution.

```
$ git clone https://github.com/dryice-devops/
microservices-demo.git
$11
```

Navigate into the microservices-demo folder. You will be able to view the following files and folder:

\$ cd microservices-demo/

- Navigate to the Deploy folder within the microservices-demo folder. Then, navigate to the kubernetes folder.
  - \$ cd deploy/kubernetes/

In the kubernetes folder you will be able to view the files and folder shown in Figure 2-19.

```
[root@devops0087 kubermetes]# ]]
total 16
-rw-r--r- 1 root root 13112 Dec 18 19:45 complete-demo.yam]
```

#### Figure 2-19. Navigate to Deploy folder

- Create the namespace sock-shop by executing the following inline command from the /home/ prometheus/microservices-demo/deploy/ kubernetes folder (Figure 2-20):
  - \$ kubectl create namespace sock-shop

```
[root@k8s-master kubernetes]# kubectl create namespace sock-shop
namespace/sock-shop created
```

#### Figure 2-20. Namespace creation for container application Sock Shop

9. Deploy Sock Shop by executing the following inline command from the /home/prometheus/ microservices-demo/deploy/kubernetes folder (Figure 2-21):

\$ kubectl apply -f complete-demo.yaml

[root@k8s-master kubernetes]# kubectl apply -f complete-demo.yaml deployment.apps/carts-db created service/carts-db created deployment.apps/carts created service/carts created deployment.apps/catalogue-db created service/catalogue-db created deployment.apps/catalogue created service/catalogue created deployment.apps/front-end created service/front-end created deployment.apps/orders-db created service/orders-db created deployment.apps/orders created service/orders created deployment.apps/payment created service/payment created deployment.apps/queue-master created service/queue-master created deployment.apps/rabbitmg created service/rabbitmq created deployment.apps/shipping created service/shipping created deployment.apps/user-db created service/user-db created deployment.apps/user created service/user created

Figure 2-21. Deploy container application Sock Shop

#### To get the status of all the components of the Sock Shop application, please execute the following command:

\$ kubectl get all -n sock-shop

The result would be as shown in Figure 2-22 (all the components' statuses should be "Running").

[root@k8s-master kube VAME pod/carts-7989595fd6- pod/carts-db-6b5bd9cf pod/catalogue-894664b pod/catalogue-db-7cb7 pod/front-end-5cf4fc8 pod/orders-78b875776c pod/orders-db-66847d55 pod/payment-5f7dcddf5 pod/queue-master-b8b6 pod/rabbitmq-568f7684 pod/shipping-6965fd455 pod/user-6d7cffc456-g pod/user-db-85c858465	8d8m2 d9-hrvvp 55-wz8lz cdf884-qxj8d 4cd-44g2r -k75pk fc-bdfwl -tqnzd d9f97-ftz5t 47-ltt56 9-h4dh7 trdp	Ctl get READY 1/1 1/1 1/1 1/1 1/1 1/1 1/1 1/1 1/1 1/	all -n soc STATUS Running Running Running Running Running Running Running Running Running Running Running Running	CK-shop RESTARTS 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	AGE 14m 14m 14m 14m 14m 14m 14m 14m 14m 14m	
VAME service/carts service/catalogue service/catalogue-db service/catalogue-db service/orders service/orders-db service/payment service/payment service/rabbitmq service/shipping service/user-db	TYPE ClusterIP ClusterIP ClusterIP NodePort ClusterIP ClusterIP ClusterIP ClusterIP ClusterIP ClusterIP ClusterIP ClusterIP ClusterIP	10.110. 10.104. 10.110. 10.103. 10.99.7 10.104. 10.104. 10.103.	121.210 8.250 0.238 221.162 154.63 255.248 94.108 40.167 1.24	EXTERNAL-IP <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none> <none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none></none>	PORT(S) 80/TCP 27017/TCP 80/TCP 3306/TCP 80:31010/TCP 80/TCP 80/TCP 80/TCP 80/TCP 80/TCP 80/TCP 80/TCP 80/TCP	AGE 14m 14m 14m 14m 14m 14m 14m 14m 14m 14m

#### Figure 2-22. Verify container application Sock Shop

11. Open your browser and open the following URL: http://Kubernetes-Cluster-IP: 31010; e.g., in our case, it is http://10.1.150.126:31010 (Figure 2-23).



Figure 2-23. Sock Shop application page

# Summary

In this chapter, we have provided hands-on steps for setting up Docker and Kubernetes. We also deployed our first containerized application. In the next chapter, we will show how to install Prometheus and Alert Manager.

# **CHAPTER 3**

# Getting Started with Prometheus and Alert Manager

In this chapter, we will go through the Prometheus monitoring tool, including its architecture and deployment. We will also be installing Prometheus and Alert Manager on Kubernetes and integrating the two. The chapter will cover the following topics:

- Overview of Prometheus
- Architecture of Prometheus and Alert Manager
- Prometheus and Alert Manager Setup and Configuration on Kubernetes Cluster
- Integration of Prometheus and Alert manager

# **Overview of Prometheus**

Container-based technologies also affect elements of infrastructure management services, like backup, patching, security, high availability, disaster recovery, and so forth. Monitoring is one such element that has evolved in leaps and bounds with the rise of container technology.

Prometheus is one of the container monitoring tools that comes up as a go-to open source monitoring and alerting solution. Prometheus was initially conceived at SoundCloud, and slowly it became a favorite tool for container monitoring. It's predominantly written in GO language and is one of the first Cloud Native Computing Foundation (CNCF)–graduated projects.

Prometheus supports multi-dimensional data models based on key-value pairs, which helps in collecting container monitoring as time-series data. It also provides a powerful query language called Prometheus Query Language (PromQL). PromQL allows the selection and aggregation of time-series data in real time, which can either be viewed as a graph, viewed as tabular data, or used by external systems via API call. Prometheus also supports various integrations with third-party systems for reporting, alerting, and dashboarding, along with exporters for fetching data from various sources.

# **Prometheus and Alert Manager Architecture**

The Prometheus and Alert Manager architecture diagram in Figure 3-1 illustrates the architecture of Prometheus and its components.

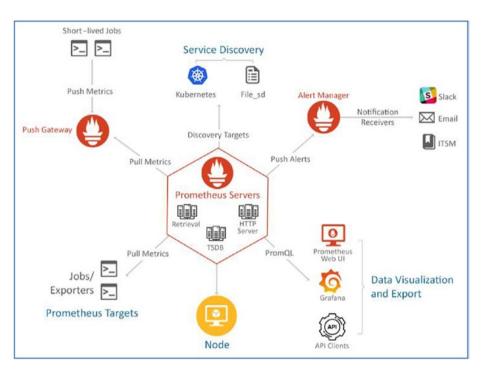


Figure 3-1. Prometheus and Alert Manager architecture

Now, let's look more closely at the following components:

**Prometheus Server:** This component is the central component that collects the metrics from multiple container cluster nodes. The metrics data is stored locally. Prometheus monitoring leverages the concept of scraping, where target systems' metric endpoints are contacted to fetch data at regular intervals.

This means that your application needs to expose an endpoint where metrics are available, and Prometheus should have a mechanism to scrape it. If the application service is not designed to provide Prometheus with metrics because the code either can't be modified or is not written to send metrics we can leverage the Prometheus exporter to fetch metrics.

**Push Gateway:** Push Gateway is used for scraping metrics from applications and passing on the data to Prometheus. Push Gateway captures the data and then transforms it into the Prometheus data format before pushing.

**Exporter:** Exporter is equivalent to a plugin or monitoring agent that runs on the target host to fetch data and then export it to the metric in Prometheus.

Alert Manager: Alert Manager is used to send the various alerts based upon the metrics data collected in Prometheus.

**Web UI:** The web UI layer of Prometheus provides the end user with an interface to visualize data collected by Prometheus.

Kubernetes APIs provide metrics regarding these infrastructure components from an availability, fault, performance, and security standpoint. Prometheus helps overcome many of the unique challenges that monitoring Kubernetes clusters can present. While the Kubernetes native API and the kube-state-metrics can fetch container, node, and application data by exposing the Kubernetes internal data (number of desired/running replicas in a deployment, schedulable nodes, etc.), Prometheus provides an aggregation layer above to enable operations teams to manage the container ecosystem seamlessly. A typical user would have to do computations of their own if they directly fetch metrics from Kubernetes for monitoring data in the absence of a tool like Prometheus.

# Prometheus and Alert Manager Setup and Configuration

In the previous chapter, while deploying the Sock Shop application, we used a YAML (a recursive acronym for "YAML Ain't Markup Language") configuration file to provide the details required for deploying the application on a target/worker node. We will now look at how to install and configure Prometheus and Alert Manager using YAML-based definitions.

These days, Kubernetes objects, such as pods, services, and deployments, are created by using YAML files, and thus have a number of advantages over a kubectl command, which is an alternative way to create Kubernetes objects.

#### Advantages of using a YAML file to create Kubernetes Objects:

- YAML files are saved into source code management, like Github, to track the changes.
- It can be parameterized to make changes to Kubernetes objects at runtime.

Before installing Prometheus and Alert Manager, we want to give readers an overview of the basics of the YAML file structure. YAML is a human-readable data-serialization language. It is commonly used for configuration files and in applications where data is being stored or transmitted. YAML was created specifically for common use cases, such as the following:

- Configuration files
- Log files
- Cross-language data sharing
- Complex data structures

At a high level, the following are the building blocks of a YAML file, shown in Figure 3-2.

Key–Value Pair	Array/Lists	Dictionary/Map
Fruit: Apple	Fruits:	Banana:
Vegetable: Radish	- Orange	Calories: 200
Liquid: Water	- Banana	Fat: 0.5g
Meat: Goat	- Mango	Carbs: 30g
	Vegetables:	Grapes:
	- Potato	Calories: 100
	- Tomato	Fat: 0.4g
	- Carrot	Carbs: 20g

Figure 3-2. YAML file building blocks

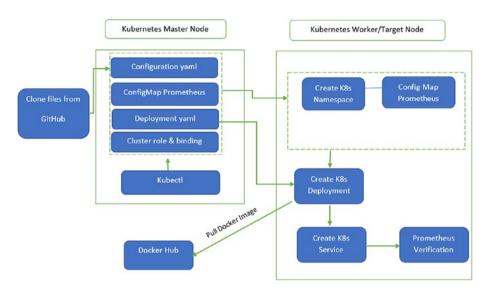
- **Key-Value Pair:** The basic type of entry in a YAML file is a key-value pair. After the key and colon there is a space and then the value.
- Arrays/Lists: Lists would have a number of items listed under the name of the list. The elements of the list would start with a hyphen (-).
- **Dictionary/Map:** A more complex type of YAML file would be a dictionary and map.

In the upcoming sections, we will cover the creation of the deployment resource by using YAML and will provide readers with an overview of key fields used in that process.

Now, let's start with setting up Prometheus and Alert Manager on a Kubernetes cluster. We will use the same container environment setup seen in the previous chapter for this exercise.

## **Setting Up Prometheus on a Kubernetes Cluster**

Figure 3-3 provides an overview of the task flows we will follow to deploy Prometheus.



#### Figure 3-3. Prometheus deployment flow

The following is the flow for the Prometheus deployment that we will follow in this chapter:

- We will first clone the configuration files from GitHub.
- We will then use Kubectl to create a namespace on the worker/target node.
- We will create a cluster role and role binding.
- We will create a config map and then deploy the configuration as a pod.
- We will then create a service for Prometheus for enduser access.
- Finally, we will test the status of the Prometheus deployment using the command line and web browser access.

## **Create Namespace**

As Prometheus is a monitoring tool, we will create a namespace to make a logical segregation from other Kubernetes components that are running under different namespaces on Kubernetes Cluster, such as default, kube-system, Any Application Namespace etc.

Prometheus and Alert Manager components, e.g., Prometheus Server, will be deployed as Kubernetes objects (e.g., pods, services, etc.) and will also be created under the monitoring namespace.

**Step 1:** Execute the following command on the master node (10.1.150.126) to create a new namespace called monitoring:

\$kubectl create namespace monitoring

After executing the command, you will see the monitoring namespace created, as shown in Figure 3-4.

[root@k8s-master /]# kubectl create namespace monitoring
namespace/monitoring created

#### Figure 3-4. Namespace creation for Prometheus monitoring

**Step 2:** Now we will create a cluster role and binding. Kubernetes resources access is regulated via role-based access control (RBAC). RBAC uses the rbac.authorization.k8s.io API to manage authorization. In the RBAC API, a cluster role contains rules that represent a set of permissions on the Kubernetes cluster. A cluster role will be used to provide access to the following:

- Non-resource endpoints (like /healthz)
- Cluster-scoped resources (like nodes)
- Namespaced resources (like pods) across all namespaces (needed to run kubectl get pods --allnamespaces, for example)

Cluster role binding grants the permissions defined in a cluster role to a user or set of users. It holds a list of subjects (users, groups, or service accounts) and a reference to the role being granted. Permissions can be granted within a namespace cluster-wide using a cluster role binding. In this step, we will create the cluster role and role binding using the single YAML file clusterRole.yaml.

Log in to the Kubernetes master node and navigate to the /home directory. Execute the following commands in the Clone clusterRole. yaml file.

\$ cd /home

```
$ git clone https://github.com/dryice-devops/prometheus.git
```

Now, let's have a look at the content of this YAML file and understand the sections and their relevance. The file has two sections: ClusterRole and ClusterRoleBinding.

### **ClusterRole Section Details**

- **apiVersion:** The beginning section of the file defines apiVersion of Kubernetes so it can interact with the Kubernetes API server. It is typically used for creating the object. apiVersion varies depending upon the Kubernetes version you have in your environment.
- **Kind:** The Kind field defines the type of Kubernetes object; e.g., ClusterRole, deployment, service, pods, etc. In our case, we are using ClusterRole.
- **Metadata:** This section has name subcomponents defined in the file. The Name field specifies the name of the object. We are using Prometheus as the name in our example.

Figure 3-5 shows snapshots of these sections.

```
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/vlbetal
kind: ClusterRole
metadata:
    name: prometheus
```

#### Figure 3-5. ClusterRole YAML file walkthrough

• **Rules:** A rule is a set of operations (verbs) that can be carried out on a group of resources that belong to different API groups (also called *legacy*). In our example, we are creating a rule that allows a user to execute several operations on nodes, proxy, service, endpoints, and pods that belong to the core (expressed by "" in the YAML file), apps, and extensions. API Groups.Rule has several subcomponent elements in it.

**Resources:** This field defines various Kubernetes resources.

**Verbs:** This field defines the action to be performed on the resources.

**nonResourceURLs:** NonResourceURLs is a set of partial URLs that a user should have access to. Non-resource URLs are not namespaced; this field is only applicable for ClusterRoles referenced from a ClusterRoleBinding. Rules can either apply to API resources (such as pods or secrets) or non-resource URL paths (such as /api), but not both. Figure 3-6 shows snapshot of above mentioned sections.

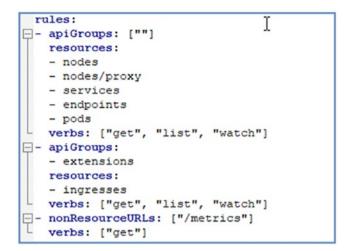


Figure 3-6. ClusterRole YAML file walkthrough

## **ClusterRoleBinding Section**

- **apiVersion:** The beginning section of the file defines the apiVersion of Kubernetes so it can interact with the Kubernetes API server. It is typically used for creating the object. apiVersion varies depending upon the Kubernetes version you have in your environment.
- **Kind:** The Kind field defines the types of Kubernetes objects; e.g., ClusterRole, deployment, service, pods, etc. In our case, we are using ClusterRoleBinding.
- **Metadata:** This section has name subcomponents defined in the file. The Name field specifies the name of the object. We are using Prometheus as the name in our example. See Figure 3-7.

```
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/vlbetal
kind: ClusterRoleBinding
metadata:
    name: prometheus
```

#### Figure 3-7. ClusterRole YAML file walkthrough

• **RoleRef:** In this field, we are binding the Prometheus ClusterRole to the default service account provided by Kubernetes inside the monitoring namespace. This section has further subcomponents in it.

**apiGroup:** This field defines the rbac.authorization. k8s.io API to interact with the API group.

kind: This field defines the object type.

Name: Name of the ClusterRole; e.g., Prometheus

• **Subjects:** This section defines the set of users and processes that needs to access the Kubernetes API. This section has further subcomponents in it.

**Kind:** This field defines the object type service account.

Name: As every Kubernetes installation has a service account called default that is associated with every running pod, we used the same default.

**Namespace:** This field defines the namespace name for cluster role binding; e.g., monitoring (which we created in previous step). Figure 3-8 shows snapshot of above mentioned sections.

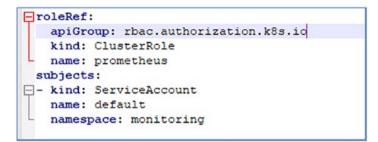


Figure 3-8. ClusterRole YAML file walkthrough

**Step 3:** Now, let's create the role using the following command on the master node (10.1.150.126) in the /home directory:

```
$kubectl create -f clusterRole.yaml
```

After executing the preceding command, the cluster role and cluster role binding will be created as per Figure 3-9.

```
[root@k8s-master prometheus]# kubectl create -f clusterRole.yaml
clusterrole.rbac.authorization.k8s.io/prometheus created
clusterrolebinding.rbac.authorization.k8s.io/prometheus created
```

#### Figure 3-9. Cluster role creation for Prometheus

## **Create a Config Map**

A config map will be used to decouple any configuration artifacts from image content and alerting rules, which will be mounted to the Prometheus container in the /etc/prometheus as prometheus.yaml and prometheus.rules files.

**Step 1:** In the previous step, while creating the cluster role and binding, we cloned a file on the Kubernetes master node called config-map.yaml in /home/Prometheus. We will use this file to create a config map. Now, let's review the content of this YAML file. The config map incorporates the prometheus.rules and prometheus.yml files under the data section. See the snapshot of configmap.yaml in Figure 3-10.

- **apiVersion:** The beginning section of the file defines the apiVersion of Kubernetes with which to interact with the Kubernetes API server. It is typically used for creating the object. apiVersion varies depending upon the Kubernetes version you have in your environment.
- **Kind:** This field defines the types of the Kubernetes objects; e.g., ClusterRole, deployment, service, pods, etc. In our case, the object is a config map.
- **Metadata:** This section has name subcomponents defined in the file that have data about the config map.

**Name:** This field has the name of the config map. In our example, we are using prometheus-serverconf.

**Label:** This field defines the label for the config map; e.g., prometheus-server-conf.

**Namespace:** This field defines the namespace where the config map will be created; e.g., monitoring.

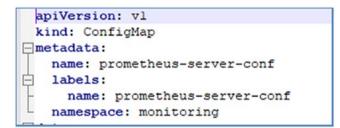


Figure 3-10. Config map YAML file walkthrough

• **Data:** This field defines the prometheus.rules and prometheus.yaml content and passes their information at runtime to the config map.

**prometheus.rules:** This section contains the alerting rules used to generate alerts on the basis of various conditions; e.g., out of memory, out of disk space, etc. In this case, we used high pod memory usage.

**prometheus.yml:** This file is used for configuring Prometheus. It defines scraping jobs and their instances, as well as which rule files to load. The prometheus.yaml file contains all the configuration information that would help to dynamically discover pods and services running in the Kubernetes cluster. The following are scrape jobs in our Prometheus scrape configuration:

- **kubernetes-apiservers:** It gets all the metrics from the API servers.
- **kubernetes-nodes:** All Kubernetes node metrics will be collected with this job.
- **kubernetes-pods:** All the pod metrics will be discovered if the pod metadata is annotated with prometheus.io/scrape and prometheus.io/port annotations.
- kubernetes-cadvisor: Collects all cAdvisor metrics.
- **kubernetes-service-endpoints:** All the service endpoints will be scraped if the service metadata is annotated with prometheus.io/scrape and prometheus.io/port annotations. Service endpoints when annotated with the prometheus annotations are used by prometheus to select and scrape data from.

- **prometheus.rules:** This contains all the alert rules for sending alerts to Alert Manager.
- **Global:** The global configuration specifies parameters that are valid in all other configuration contexts. This has various subcomponents, as follows:

**scrape\_interval:** How frequently to scrape targets by default; we took 20s in our example.

evaluation\_interval: How long until a scrape request times out; we took 20s in our example.

• **rule\_files:** This specifies a list of globs. Glob provides method for traversing file systems and find pathname or files matching a specific pattern. Using this Rules and alerts are read from all matching files that we defined under prometheus.rules and the path defined as /etc/prometheus/prometheus. rules. See Figure 3-11.

```
Edata:
prometheus.rules: |-
     groups:
白
     - name: devopscube demo alert
      rules:
白
       - alert: High Pod Meory
        expr: sum(container memory usage bytes) > 1
         for: 1m
labels:
         severity: slack
         annotations:
         summary: High Memory Usage
  prometheus.yml: |-
    global:
     scrape_interval: 20s
      evaluation interval: 20s
     rule files:
      - /etc/prometheus/prometheus.rules
     alerting:
       alertmanagers:
       - scheme: http
        static configs:
          - targets:
         - "alertmanager.monitoring.svc:9093 "
```

Figure 3-11. Config map YAML file walkthrough

Alerting: This section specifies settings related to Alert Manager.

- **alertmanagers:** This section defines how to integrate with Alert Manager for sending alerts from Prometheus.
- **Scheme:** This configures the protocol scheme used for making the requests to send the requests; e.g., http, https; we used http in our case.
- **static\_configs:** Using Static\_Configs, Alertmanagers configuration can be defined as a static value. Another option available is to use dynamic discovery mechanism for configuring Alertmanagers.
- **targets:** This defines the static target value (IP address and port) xxx.xxx.xxx:port on which Alert Manager is running.

**scrape\_configs:** This section specifies a set of targets and parameters for how to scrape them. Prometheus needs some targets to scrape application metrics from.

- **job\_name:** The job name assigned to scraped metrics; in our case we use prometheus as a job name, the same used by Prometheus to monitor itself.
- **static\_configs:** In this Static\_config we can define the list of Targets that will be used for scrapping metrics using above mentioned Job.
- **Targets:** Targets may be statically configured via the static\_configs parameter or dynamically discovered using one of the supported servicediscovery mechanisms; e.g., Consul, Kubernetes, etc. In our case, we use a static target (IP & port); e.g., xxx. xxx.xxx.xxx:port.

**Step 2:** Execute the following command to create the config map in Kubernetes on the master node (10.1.150.126) in the /home/Prometheus directory:

```
kubectl create -f config-map.yaml
```

After executing the preceding command, a config map with the name prometheus-server-conf will be created, as shown in Figure 3-12.

```
[root@k8s-master prometheus]# kubectl create -f config-map.yaml
configmap/prometheus-server-conf created
```

#### Figure 3-12. Config map creation for Prometheus

## **Create a Prometheus Deployment**

**Step 1:** In a previous step, while creating the cluster role and binding, we cloned a file on the Kubernetes master node called prometheus-deployment.yaml in /home/Prometheus. We will use the official Prometheus Docker image v2.12.0 from the Docker hub. In this configuration, the Prometheus config map is mounted as a file inside /etc/Prometheus. The following are the details of the Prometheus-deployment.yaml file (Figure 3-13):

- **apiVersion:** The beginning section of the file defines the apiVersion of Kubernetes with which to interact with the Kubernetes API server. It is typically used for creating the object. The apiVersion varies depending upon the Kubernetes version you have in your environment.
- **kind:** This field defines the types of the Kubernetes objects; e.g., ClusterRole, deployment, service, pods, etc. In our case, we are using a deployment object.

- **Metadata:** This section has name subcomponents defined in the file.
  - Name: This field specifies the name of the service object; e.g., prometheus-deployment.
  - **Namespace:** This field specifies the namespace of the service object; e.g., monitoring.



Figure 3-13. Prometheus-deployment YAML file walkthrough

• **Spec:** This field provides the specification of service.

**Replicas:** This field provides data about the number of pods to be made available at a particular instance.

**Selector:** This section provides details about the service selector. Service Selector enables grouping of set of Pods (in this case Prometheus pod) which will be exposed as a Service for external network access.

• **matchLabels:** The name will be used to match and identify the service (Figure 3-14).

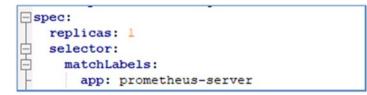


Figure 3-14. prometheus-deployment YAML file walkthrough

• **Template:** type of port used by the service (Figure 3-15)

**Metadata:** Name will be used to match and identify the service

• Labels: key-value pair that is attached to object intended to be used to specify identifying attributes. See here:

```
app — key
prometheus-server — value
```

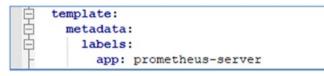


Figure 3-15. prometheus-deployment YAML file walkthrough

- **Spec:** See Figure 3-16.
  - Containers: detail of container object

Name: name of the container

Image: image with version

**Args:** argument used at the time of container creation

- --config.file=/etc/prometheus/prometheus.yml: This is the file name to be used at the time of deployment.
- --storage.tsdb.path=/prometheus/: This determines where Prometheus writes its database.

#### **Ports:**

• containerport: application listening port

```
spec:
containers:
- name: prometheus
image: prom/prometheus:latest
args:
- "--config.file=/etc/prometheus/prometheus.yml"
- "--storage.tsdb.path=/prometheus/"
ports:
- containerPort: 9090
```

Figure 3-16. prometheus-deployment YAML file walkthrough

 volumeMounts: A storage volume allows an existing StorageOS volume to be mounted into your pod (Figure 3-17). Two volumeMounts are created: prometheus-config-volume and prometheus-storagevolume. The former will be using our config map to manage prometheus.yml. With prometheus-storagevolume, we create an empty directory in which to store the Prometheus data.

Name: name of the volume

mountPath: defines the mounted path

₿.	volumeMounts:
白	- name: prometheus-config-volume
-	mountPath: /etc/prometheus/
¢.	- name: prometheus-storage-volume
+	mountPath: /prometheus/

Figure 3-17. prometheus-deployment YAML file walkthrough

volume: A volume is a directory with data that is accessible to all containers running in a pod and gets mounted into each container's file system. Its lifetime is identical to the lifetime of the pod. Decoupling the volume lifetime from the container lifetime allows the volume to persist across container crashes and restarts. Volumes can be backed by the host's file system, by persistent block storage volumes such as AWS EBS, or by a distributed file system.

name: name of the volume

configMap: config map used by the volume

- **defaultMode:** This defines the default file permissions for Volume.
- **name:** defined name of the config map that needs to be used

name:

• **emptyDir:** The emptyDir volume is first created when a pod is assigned to a node, and it exists as long as that pod is running on the node we used to store the Prometheus data (Figure 3-18).

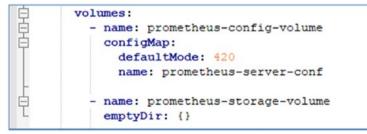


Figure 3-18. prometheus-deployment YAML file walkthrough

**Step 2:** To create a deployment on the monitoring namespace using the prometheus-deployment.yaml file, execute the following command on the master node (10.1.150.126) in the /home/Prometheus folder:

```
$kubectl apply -f prometheus-deployment.yaml -n monitoring
```

Once the preceding command has run successfully, prometheusdeployment will be created under the monitoring namespace in the Kubernetes cluster, as shown in Figure 3-19.

```
[root@k8s-master prometheus]# kubectl apply -f prometheus-deployment.yaml -n monitoring
deployment.apps/prometheus-dep_oyment created
```

#### Figure 3-19. Prometheus deployment

**Step 3:** You can check the created deployment using the following command on the master node (10.1.150.126) in the /home/Prometheus folder. It will return the name of the deployment—in our case, prometheus-deployment) and its states, as shown in Figure 3-20.

\$kubectl get deployments --namespace=monitoring

Figure 3-20. Prometheus deployment status verification

### **Exposing Prometheus as a Service**

To access the Prometheus dashboard over IP, we need to expose it as a Kubernetes service.

**Step 1:** In a previous section, while creating the cluster role and binding, we cloned a file on the Kubernetes master node called prometheus-service.yaml in /home/prometheus. It exposes Prometheus

on all Kubernetes node IP addresses on port 30000. The following are the details of the prometheus-service.yaml file:

- **apiVersion:** The beginning section of the file defines the apiVersion of Kubernetes with which to interact with the Kubernetes API server. It is typically used for creating the object. apiVersion varies depending upon the Kubernetes version you have in your environment.
- **kind:** This field defines the types of the Kubernetes object; e.g., ClusterRole, deployment, service, pods, etc. In our case, we are using a service object.
- Metadata: This section has name subcomponents defined in the file.

**Name:** Specifies the name of the service object; e.g., Prometheus-service.

**Namespace:** The namespace of the service object; e.g., monitoring.

**Annotations:** These are used for non-identifying information that is used by the other tools like AlertManager for scraping Promeheus endpoint (except K8).

- **prometheus.io/scrape:** To scrape metrics for the specific service or pods, use the prometheus scrape annotation (Figure 3-21).
- **prometheus.io/port:** This annotation indicates to Prometheus to scrape the specific port.



#### Figure 3-21. prometheus-service YAML file walkthrough

• **spec:** Specification of the service

selector: Service selector

- **App:** Pod name used by the service to communicate with this pod.
- **Type:** In this section, we define how the specific Kubernetes service will be exposed (the default value is ClusterIP). In our example, we are using NodePort, which exposes the service on each node's IP at a static port (the NodePort). A ClusterIP service, to which the NodePort service routes, is automatically created. You'll be able to contact the NodePort service from outside the cluster by requesting <NodeIP>:<NodePort> (Figure 3-22).

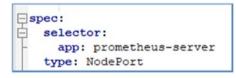


Figure 3-22. prometheus-service YAML file walkthrough

Ports: Service selector

- **Port:** The port on which the service will be exposed internally within the cluster. Once the service is up on the defined port it starts sending requests to the port on the pods selected by the service.
- **targetPort:** This is a port via which the service will send the request to the specific pod; the pod must be run on the same port.
- **nodePort:** This port is used to expose the service externally to the cluster. NodePort is the default setting if the port field is not specified (Figure 3-23).



Figure 3-23. prometheus-service YAML file walkthrough

**Step 2:** Create the service using the following command on the master node (10.1.150.126). See Figure 3-24.

\$kubectl create -f prometheus-service.yaml
--namespace=monitoring

```
[root@k8s-master prometheus]$ kubectl create -f prometheus-service.yaml --namespace=monitoring
service/prometheus-service created
```

#### Figure 3-24. Prometheus service creation

**Step 3:** Once the service is created, the Prometheus dashboard can be accessed by using any Kubernetes master node IP address (10.1.150.126) on port 30000 (Figure 3-25).

🕴 Promet	heus Time Series	s Collectic 🗙	+					
$\epsilon \rightarrow c$	C Not	secure   10.1	.15 <b>0.1</b> 26:	30000/graph?g0.range,	_input=1h&g0.e	xpr=&g0.tab=0		
Promet	<b>heus</b> Ale							
🖸 Enable qu	uery history							
Expressi	ion (press Sh	nift+Enter for	r newlin	es)				
Execute	- insert	metric at cu	rsor - 🗘					
Graph	Console							
1	- 1h	+	*	Until	*	Res. (s)	stacked	
· · · · · ·								
Add Gra	aph							

Figure 3-25. Prometheus console access

**Step 4:** Now, if you browse to Status ➤ Targets, you can see the Kubernetes endpoints are connected to Prometheus automatically using service discovery (Figure 3-26).

Prometheus Time Series Collecti: X +						
← → C (O Not secure   10.1.150.126/30000//targets						
Prometheus Alerts Graph Status	▼ Help					
Targets						
All Unhealthy						
kubernetes-apiservers (1/1 up)	show less					
Endpoint	State	Labels	Last Scrape	Scrape Duration	Error	
https://10.1.150.126:6443/metrics	UP	instance="10.1.150.126:6443" job="kubernetes-apiservers"	473ms ago	75.25ms		
kubernetes-cadvisor (2/2 up)	iow less					
Endpoint	State	Labels	Last Scrape	Scrape Duration	Error	
https://kubernetes.default.svc:443/api/v1 nodes/devops0088/proxy/metrics/cadvis or		beta, kubernetes, jo, arch="amd64" beta, kubernetes, jo, os="linus" instance="demops0088" job="kubernetes, cadvior" kubernetes, jo, arch="amd64" kubernetes, jo, brann=="demops0088"	1.56s ago	17.13ms		
		kubernetes_io_os="linux"				

Figure 3-26. Verify Prometheus console access

# **Setting Up Alert Manager**

Figure 3-27 provides an overview of the task flows we will follow to deploy Alert Manager.

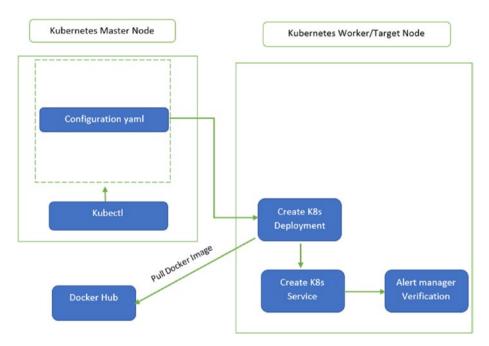


Figure 3-27. Alert Manager deployment flow

The following is the flow for the Prometheus deployment that we will follow in this chapter:

We will use the already cloned configuration files from Github.

We will deploy the Alert Manager configuration as a pod.

We will then create a service for Alert Manager for end-user access.

Finally, we will test the status of the Alert Manager deployment using the command line and web browser access.

### **Create a Deployment**

**Step 1:** In a previous section, while creating the cluster role and binding, we cloned a file on the Kubernetes master node called alertmanager-deployment.yaml in /home/prometheus. The following are the details of this YAML file:

- **apiVersion:** The beginning section of the file defines the apiVersion of Kubernetes with which to interact with the Kubernetes API server. It is typically used for creating the object. apiVersion varies depending upon the Kubernetes version you have in your environment.
- **kind:** This field defines the type of the Kubernetes object; e.g., ClusterRole, deployment, service, pod, etc. In our case, we are using a deployment object.
- **Metadata:** This section has name subcomponents defined in the file (Figure 3-28).

**Name:** Specifies the name of the deployment object; e.g., alertmanager.

**Namespace:** Specifies the namespace of the deployment object; e.g., monitoring.

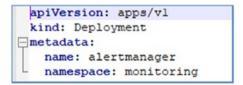


Figure 3-28. alertmanager-deployment YAML file walkthrough

• Spec: Specification of service

**Replicas:** Number of pods to be available on Kubernetes cluster; e.g., 1 or 2

Selector: Service selector

• **matchLabels:** Name will be used to match and identify the service by key and value pair; e.g., we used app as the key and alertmanager as the value (Figure 3-29).



Figure 3-29. alertmanager-deployment YAML file walkthrough

Template: Type of port used by the service

- **Metadata:** Name will be used to match and identify the service (Figure 3-30).
  - **Labels:** Key-value pair that is attached to the object intended to be used to specify identifying attributes. app is a key and alertmanager is the value.



Figure 3-30. alertmanager-deployment YAML file walkthrough

- **Spec:** See Figure 3-31.
  - Containers: Detail of container object

Name: Name of the container

Image: Docker image with version

#### **Ports:**

• containerPort: Application listening port



Figure 3-31. alertmanager-deployment YAML file walkthrough

**Step 2:** Create the deployment using the following command on the master node (10.1.150.126) in the /home/Prometheus folder (Figure 3-32):

\$kubectl create -f alertmanager-deployment.yaml

```
[root@k8s-master prometheus]# kubectl create -f alertmanager-deployment.yaml
deployment.apps/alertmanager created
```

#### Figure 3-32. Alert Manager deployment

### **Create a Service**

**Step 1:** We need to expose the Alert Manager using NodePort just to access the web UI. Prometheus will talk to Alert Manager using the internal service endpoint. In a previous section, while creating the cluster role

and binding, we cloned a file on the Kubernetes master node called alertmanager-service.yaml. The following outlines the details of the YAML file:

- **apiVersion:** The beginning section of the file defines the apiVersion of Kubernetes with which to interact with the Kubernetes API server. It is typically used for creating the object. apiVersion varies depending upon the Kubernetes version you have in your environment (Figure 3-33).
- **Kind:** This field defines the type of the Kubernetes object; e.g., ClusterRole, deployment, service, pod, etc. In our case, we are using a service object.
- **Metadata:** This section has name subcomponents defined in the file.

**Name:** Specifies the name of the service object; e.g.. alertmanager

**Namespace:** The namespace of the service object; e.g., monitoring



Figure 3-33. alertmanager-service YAML file walkthrough

• Spec:

Selector: Service selector

• **app:** Pod name used by the service to communicate with this pod

**Type:** This field provides information about the type of the publishing services. Kubernetes service types allow you to specify what kind of service you want. In our example, we are using app: alertmanager, where app is a key and alertmanager is the value of the pod we defined in alertmanager-deployment. yaml. The same will be used by alertmanager-service to communicate with this pod name (Figure 3-34).

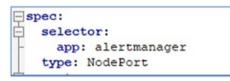


Figure 3-34. alertmanager-service YAML file walkthrough

**ports:** We explained about the port, targetPort, and nodePort fields in the "Exposing Prometheus as a Service" section (Figure 3-35).



Figure 3-35. alertmanager-service YAML file walkthrough

**Step 2:** Create the service using the following command (Figure 3-36):

\$kubectl create -f alertmanager-service.yaml

```
[root@k8s-master prometheus]# kubectl create -f alertmanager-service.yaml
service/alertmanager created
```

#### Figure 3-36. Alert Manager service creation

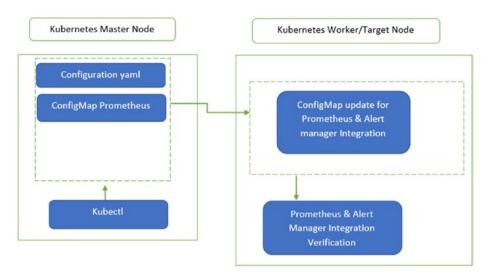
After creating the service, the Alert Manager dashboard is accessible on node port 32000 with the IP address of the Kubernetes master node (10.1.150.126) (Figure 3-37).

🐥 Alertmanager	× +				
€ → C C	Not secure   10.1.150.126:32000/#/alerts			\$	<b>F</b> (2
	Alertmanager Alerts Silences Status Help			New Si	lence
	Filter Group	Receiver: All	Silenced	🔲 Inhib	ited
			+	🔏 Silen	ce
	Custom matcher, e.g. env="production"				
	+ Expand all groups				
	No alert groups found				

Figure 3-37. Alert Manager dashboard access

# **Alert Manager and Prometheus Integration**

Figure 3-38 provides an overview of the task flows we will follow to integrate Alert Manager with Prometheus.



#### Figure 3-38. Alert Manager and Prometheus integration flow

The following is the flow for the Alert Manager and Prometheus integration that we will follow in this chapter:

We will use the already cloned configuration files from Github.

We will then use Kubectl to update the config map.

Finally, we will test the status of the integration using Prometheus web browser access.

**Step 1:** Log in to the Kubernetes master node (10.1.150.126), go to the /home/prometheus folder, and update the config-map.yaml file. Replace alertmanager.monitoring.svc:9093 with the Alert Manager URL, e.g., http://10.1.150.126:32000, under the targets section of prometheus.yml highlighted in the config-map.yaml file in Figure 3-39.

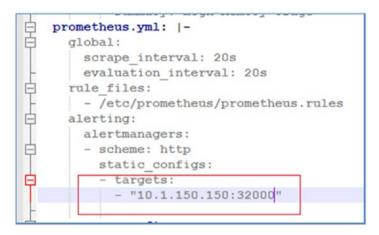


Figure 3-39. Alert Manager and Prometheus integration

**Step 2:** Run the following command in the master node (10.1.150.126) under /home/prometheus to get the config map:

```
$kubectl get configmaps -n=monitoring
```

This command returns the config map list (Figure 3-40).

```
[root@k8s-master prometheus]# kubectl get configmaps -n=monitoring
NAME DATA AGE
alertmanager-config 1 20h
prometheus-server-conf 2 21h
```

#### Figure 3-40. Config map list

**Step 3:** Run the following command in the master node (10.1.150.126) under /home/prometheus to get the prometheus-server-conf config map we updated in Step 1 (Figure 3-41).

\$ kubectl delete configmaps prometheus-server-conf -n=monitoring

```
[root@k8s-master prometheus]# kubectl delete configmaps prometheus-server-conf -n=monitoring
configmap "prometheus-server-conf" deleted
```

#### Figure 3-41. Config map delete

**Step 4:** Once you have deleted prometheus-server-conf, create the same with the updated config-map.yaml file in the master node (10.1.150.126) by executing the following command from the /home/ Prometheus directory (Figure 3-42):

\$ kubectl create -f config-map.yaml

```
[root@k8s-master prometheus]# kubectl create -f config-map.yaml
configmap/prometheus-server-conf created
```

#### Figure 3-42. Config map create

**Step 5:** Execute the following command to identify the Prometheus pod and then delete to get the updated config map changes:

```
$kubectl get pods -n=monitoring
```

The preceding command will return all the pods running under the monitoring namespace (Figure 3-43).

			-	
alertmanager-564d4884bd-mjjft	1/1	Running	0	18h
prometheus-deployment-5c4f4f5779-p6pcm	1/1	Running	0	62s

#### Figure 3-43. List Prometheus pods

Select Prometheus-deployment-5c4f4f5779-p6pcm and delete the same with the following command (Figure 3-44):

\$kubectl delete pods prometheus-deployment-5c4f4f5779-zgkkf
-n=monitoring

[root0k0s-master prometheus]# kubectl delete pods prometheus-deployment-5c4f4f5779-zgkkf -n=monitoring
pod "prometheus-deployment-5c4f4f5779-zgkkf" deleted

#### Figure 3-44. Delete pods

Check the running pods again by using the following command:

\$kubectl get pods -n=monitoring

It will return the newly created Prometheus pods by Kubernetes deployment (Figure 3-45).

```
    [root@k8s-master prometheus]# kubectl get pods -n=monitoring

    NAME
    READY

    alertmanager-564d4884bd-mjjft
    1/1

    prometheus-deployment-5c4f4f5779-zhmdt
    1/1

    Running
    0

    90m
```

#### Figure 3-45. List pods

**Step 6:** Check the Prometheus URL to verify Alert Manager is configured correctly:

- Open Prometheus URL http://10.1.150.126:30000.
- Go to Status ➤ Runtime & Build Information.
- Check the Alert Manager section. The Alert Manager end point should be mentioned http://10.1.150.126:32000/api/v1/alerts (Figure 3-46).

$\leftrightarrow$ $\rightarrow$ C (i) Not secure   10.	1.150.126:30000/status				
Prometheus Alerts Graph	Status • Help				
Goroutines	Runtime & Build Information Command-Line Flags	110			
GOMAXPROCS GOGC	Configuration	2			
GODEBUG	Rules				
Storage Retention	Targets Service Discovery	15d			
Build Information					
Version	2.12.0				
Revision	43acd0e2e93f9f70c49b2267efa0124	f1e759e86			
Branch	HEAD				
BuildUser	root@7a9dbdbe0cc7				
BuildDate	20190818-13:53:16	20190818-13:53:16			
GoVersion	go1.12.8				
Alertmanagers					
Endpoint					
http://10.1.150.126:32000/api/v1/alerts					

Figure 3-46. Verify Alert Manager endpoint in Prometheus

• Prometheus starts sending the alert after five seconds (configured in config map) to Alert Manager, and the State would be "FIRING" in the Prometheus URL under the Alert section (Figure 3-47).

← → ♂ O Not secure   10.1.150.12630000/alerts					
Prometheus Alerts Graph Status - Help					
Alerts					
Show annotations					
/etc/prometheus/prometheus.rules > devopscube demo	alert				
High Pod Memory (1 active)					
alert: righ Pod Honory expr: sum(container_memory_usage_bytes) > 1 for: in labels: sourcity: slack anocations: summary: High Memory Usage					
Labels	State	Active Since	Value		
alertname="High Pod Memory" severity="slack"	FIRING	2019-11-01 06:01:22.056441315 +0000 UTC	6.667235328e+0		

Figure 3-47. Alert view in Prometheus

**Step 7:** Verify Alert Manager starts receiving the alerts from Prometheus:

- Open the Alert Manager URL http://10.1.150.126:32000/
- Click "Alerts."
- It shows alert, e.g., alertname = "High Pod Memory," sending from Prometheus (Figure 3-48).

$\leftarrow \rightarrow$	G	③ Not secure   10.1.150.126:32000/#/alerts
		Alertmanager Alerts Silences Status Help
		Filter Group
		Custom matcher, e.g. env="production"
		+ Expand all groups
	-	alertname="High Pod Memory" + 1 alert
		06:02:22, 2019-11-01 (UTC) 🕂 Info 🛃 Source 🔏 Silence
		severity="slack" +

CHAPTER 3 GETTING STARTED WITH PROMETHEUS AND ALERT MANAGER

Figure 3-48. Alert view in Alert Manager

# Summary

In this chapter, we have learned the basics of Prometheus, its architecture, and various components. We set up Prometheus and Alert Manager and integrated the two to work together. In the next chapter, we will start with a deep-dive understanding of Prometheus and Alert Manager solutions for container monitoring, starting with infrastructure parameter monitoring.

### **CHAPTER 4**

# Container Infrastructure Monitoring

This chapter will provide hands-on steps to the readers on container infrastructure monitoring using Prometheus. We will also learn how to deploy a containerized application using a Helm chart. A Helm chart is a package manager for Kubernetes that helps developers and operators to more easily package, configure, and deploy applications and services onto Kubernetes clusters. This chapter will cover the following topics:

- Container Infrastructure Monitoring Using Parameters
- Labels
- Helm and Tiller Installation
- Using Exporters for Container Monitoring

# **Container Infrastructure Monitoring Using Parameters**

Before we jump into using Prometheus to monitor a Kubernetesmanaged container ecosystem, let's look at the key aspects that need to be monitored from an infrastructure perspective. Monitoring and alerting at the container orchestration level works on two levels. On one side, we need to monitor whether the services handled by Kubernetes do meet the requirements we defined. On the other side, we need to make sure all the components of Kubernetes are up and running. From an infrastructure perspective, the following are the key layers that need to be monitored:

- Containers
- Clusters running the containers, such as Kubernetes
- Communication and telemetry between containers (this can be done via contracts or by collecting logs from tools like ISTIO)
- Host OS/machine running the cluster
- Server running the hosts

To monitor Kubernetes, we need to ensure the status of certain services and components that are core to Kubernetes' functionality. Let's look at some of the key monitoring areas.

# **Service Discovery**

In microservices apps, services are added and removed all the time. Containers move between hosts; autoscaling groups add and remove instances dynamically. Additionally, there's failover and auto-replication adding to the complexity of container monitoring. Manually validating the availability of services every time their network location changes is not feasible. Hence, there is a need for a monitoring solution for this.

# **Node Availability**

Providing alerts regarding node availability is not very different from monitoring VMs or machines. Essentially, it involves checking if the host is up or down/unreachable, as well as the resources' availability (CPU, memory, disk, etc.).

### **Node Health**

A node failure is not so much a critical event in Kubernetes, as its scheduler service will spin off containers in other available nodes. However, it's crucial to monitor scenarios where we could be running out of nodes, or where the resource requirements for the deployed applications exhaust existing nodes' resources. Another scenario could be to monitor quota limits configured at the resources level. To monitor node status, alerts on the metrics kube\_node\_status\_ready and kube\_ node\_spec\_unschedulable can be scheduled. If you want to have an alert for capacity, you will have to sum each scheduled pod request for CPU and memory and then check that it doesn't go over the threshold for each of the nodes; this can be done using kube\_node\_status\_capacity\_cpu\_ cores and kube\_node\_status\_capacity\_memory\_bytes.

### **Kubernetes Control Plane**

The Kubernetes control plane constitutes the control plane of the cluster. Its service components (or "master" components) provide features like container orchestration, computing resource management, and the

#### CHAPTER 4 CONTAINER INFRASTRUCTURE MONITORING

central API for users and services. An unhealthy control plane will sooner or later affect the availability of applications or the ability of users to manage their workloads. The control plane components include the following:

- Kubernetes API server
- Controller manager
- Scheduler
- etcd key-value store

Basic monitoring of these components would involve an HTTP check that queries the health-check endpoint (/healthz) exposed by instances of these services or by scraping the API endpoint in Kubernetes.

In addition to health checks, control plane components expose internal metrics via a Prometheus HTTP endpoint (/metrics) that can be added into a time-series database. While most of the metric data is useful for retrospective or live issue debugging/troubleshooting, some metrics, like latency, request, or error counts, can be used for proactive alerting.

# **Kubernetes Infrastructure Services**

Beside the master components, there are a number of other services running in the cluster that play critical infrastructure service roles, like DNS and service discovery (kube-dns, coredns) or traffic management (kube-proxy). Just like control plane components, these components provide HTTP endpoints for health checks as well as internal metrics via a Prometheus endpoint.

# **Kubernetes Metrics**

kube-state-metrics is a service that leverages Kubernetes APIs and provides metrics about the status/state of objects like pods, nodes, and deployments. The following are some of the key insights provided by kubestate that help operations to easily manage the container ecosystem state:

- Noting how many pods are running/stopped/terminated
- Noting how many times the specific pod has been restarted
- Analyzing the response time of a Kubernetes service
- Analyzing the slowest endpoints of a Kubernetes HTTP service
  - Noting the most frequently used HTTP endpoints
  - Noting the slowest HTTP endpoints
  - Looking at the average connection time
  - Noting any error codes

### Labels

Labels enable us to capture additional attribute details of the data monitored. In the object, this is further stored as a key-value pair, where the key is the name of the attribute being captured and the value is the actual attribute data.

Labels work very well in Prometheus using PromQL. Let us consider a metric for getting the total number of HTTP requests received by the Kubernetes API server by differentiating based on the label, such as in the following:

```
instance ="10.1.150.150:30000", job = "federate" and
quantile="0.999"
```

#### **PromQL:**

http\_requests{instance="10.1.150.150:30000",job="federate", quantile="0.999"}

#### CHAPTER 4 CONTAINER INFRASTRUCTURE MONITORING

Now, let us see how we can execute the preceding example to generate the respective metrics on the Prometheus server.

Log in to the Prometheus UI and navigate to the Graph section, where you should type the following query:

```
http_requests{instance="10.1.150.150:30000",job="federate",
quantile="0.999"}
```

Click the Execute button, which will show the result in the form of a graph, as shown in Figure 4-1.

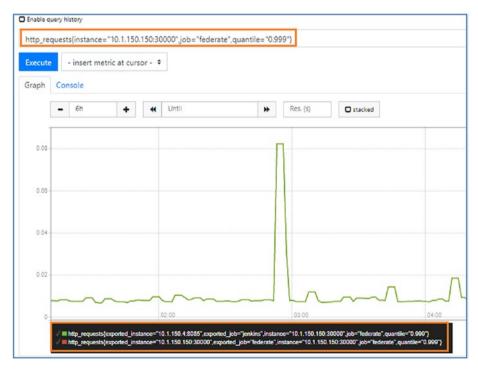


Figure 4-1. HTTP request filterd by label

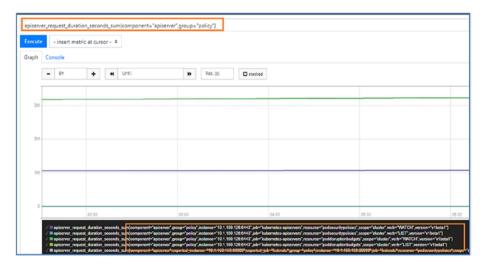
Let us consider another example to find out the sum of the total number of requests handled by the Kubernetes API server per second by differentiating based on label, like component="apiserver", group="policy". Here is the PromQL:

```
apiserver_request_duration_seconds_sum{component="apiserver",
group="policy"}
```

Again, type the following PromQL query:

```
http_requests{instance="10.1.150.150:30000",job="federate",
quantile="0.999"}
```

This will generate the respective metrics in Prometheus. Click the Execute button, which will show the result in the form of a graph, as shown in Figure 4-2.



*Figure 4-2.* Apiserver request duration in seconds, sum, filtered by label

In the upcoming section, you will learn about the Prometheus exporters; e.g., cAdvisor, Blackbox. These exporters pull the metrics from various systems—e.g., Kubernetes, nodes, etc.—and push the data into Prometheus for further analysis. To install exporters on the Kubernetes cluster we need a Helm chart-based installation.

# **Helm and Tiller Setup**

Helm consists of two components: Helm and Tiller. Helm itself is the client-side component that you run in your command line, while Tiller resides on target node cluster.

Before continuing, you will need to download and install Helm. For this exercise we are using the following Linux version of Helm: helmv2.16.0-rc.2-linux-amd64.tar.gz. Helm should be installed on master node 10.1.150.126.

**Step 1:** Download Helm on the master node in the /home/prometheus folder and unpack the tar. After unpacking this, the linux-amd64 folder should be created. Below commands download the tar file using wget and then are unpacked using tar command:

- \$ wget https://get.helm.sh/helm-v2.16.0-rc.2linux-amd64.tar.gz
- \$ tar zxvf helm-v2.16.0-rc.2-linux-amd64.tar.gz

After executing the preceding commands, you will see the Helm and Tiller executables, as seen in Figure 4-3.

```
/home/prometheus/linux-amd64
[root@k8s-master linux-amd64]# 11
total 79692
-rwxr-xr-x. 1 root root 40460288 Oct 31 21:19 helm
-rw-r--r--. 1 root root 11343 Oct 31 21:20 LICENSE
-rw-r--r--. 1 root root 3444 Oct 31 21:20 README.n
-rwxr-xr-x. 1 root root 41127936 Oct 31 21:19 tiller
```

#### Figure 4-3. Downloading Helm

**Step 2:** After unzipping, copy the Helm binary from the /home/ prometheus/linux-amd64 directory to the /usr/local/bin directory using cp command for installing Helm on your local Linux VM:

\$ cp helm /usr/local/bin

After copying the Helm executable, execute the following command from the /home/prometheus directory to verify that Helm was installed successfully.

The output should show the Helm version, as shown in Figure 4-4.

\$helm version

```
[root@k8s-master prometheus]$ helm version
Client: &version.Version(SemVer:"v2.16.0-ro.2", GitCommit:"el3bb94621d4ef666270cfbe734aaabf342a49bb", GitTreeState:"clean")
Error: could not find tiller
```

#### Figure 4-4. Verifying Helm version

**Note** Please ignore the error related to Tiller, as Tiller will be installed later on the Kubernetes master node.

### **Installing Tiller**

Tiller is used to deploy the Helm chart on the Kubernetes cluster. Tiller requires a Kubernetes service account and permissions to access Kubernetes resources using role-based access and control (RBAC). The Kubernetes service account is used by Tiller for Kubernetes API server authentication. RBAC is used to give access to Kubernetes resources—e.g., pods, services, etc.—at the cluster level or within Kubernetes namespaces.

Kubernetes provides the following types of RBAC permission:

**Role and ClusterRole:** A set of permissions over a user or group of users. A role is always confined to a single namespace, while a ClusterRole is clusterscoped.

**RoleBinding and ClusterRoleBinding:** Grants the permissions defined in a Role/ClusterRole respectively to a user or group of users. RoleBindings are bound to a certain namespace, and ClusterRoleBindings are cluster-global.

#### CHAPTER 4 CONTAINER INFRASTRUCTURE MONITORING

In the following steps we will create a Kubernetes service account and ClusterRoleBinding for Tiller to deploy the Helm charts on the Kubernetes cluster.

**Step 1:** Navigate to the /home/prometheus directory. You will find the tiller-helm.yaml file on the Kubernetes master node (10.1.150.126). This will be used for creating the service account in kube-system and for the ClusterRoleBinding, which will provide Tiller access to the cluster.

The kube-system is a namespace used by Kubernetes to manage objects or resources created by the Kubernetes components, so typically it contains pods like kube-dns, kube-proxy, kubernetes-dashboard, and so on.

Next is the explanation of the various sections of the tiller-helm. yaml file. It has two sections: ClusterRole and ClusterRoleBinding.

### **ClusterRole Section Details**

- **apiVersion:** The beginning section of the file defines the apiVersion of Kubernetes with which to interact with the Kubernetes API server. It is typically used for creating the object. apiVersion varies depending upon the Kubernetes version you have in your environment.
- **Kind:** This field defines the type of the Kubernetes object; e.g., ClusterRole, deployment, service, pod, service account, etc. In our case, we defined kind as ServiceAccount.
- Metadata: This section has name subcomponents defined in the file. The name field specifies the name of the object. We are using tiller as the name in our example. For the namespace, we are using kube-system.

These sections are explained in Figure 4-5.

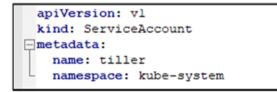


Figure 4-5. tiller-helm.yaml file walkthrough

### **ClusterRoleBinding Section**

- **apiVersion**: The beginning section of the file defines the apiVersion of Kubernetes with which to interact with the Kubernetes API server. It is typically used for creating the object. apiVersion varies depending upon the Kubernetes version you have in your environment.
- **Kind:** This field defines the type of the Kubernetes object; e.g., ClusterRole, deployment, service, pods, etc. In our case, we are using ClusterRoleBinding, as per the explanation covered in the section "Installing Tiller."
- **Metadata:** This section has name subcomponents defined in the file. The name field specifies the name of the object. We are using tiller as the name in our example. See Figure 4-6.

```
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/vlbetal
kind: ClusterRoleBinding
-metadata:
    name: tiller
```

Figure 4-6. tiller-helm.yaml file walkthrough

#### CHAPTER 4 CONTAINER INFRASTRUCTURE MONITORING

• **RoleRef:** In this field, we are binding the Prometheus cluster role to the default service account provided by Kubernetes inside the monitoring namespace. This section has further subcomponents in it.

**apiGroup:** In Kubernetes, the API group is specified with the apiVersion to make a REST API call for a serialized object. Kubernetes RBAC uses the rbac. authorization.k8s.io API group to communicate with the Kubernetes API server. For detailed information about the apiGroup and Kubernetes REST API please refer to the following links: <sup>1</sup>

kind: This field defines the object type.

**name:** This is the name of the cluster role; e.g., cluster-admin.

```
See Figure 4-7.
```

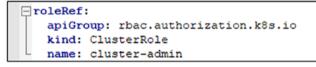


Figure 4-7. tiller-helm.yaml file walkthrough

**Subjects:** This section defines the set of users, such as service accounts and processes, that need to access the Kubernetes API. Here, we have to give the reference of the tiller service account, as shown in Figure 4-8 under the following subsections.

https://kubernetes.io/docs/reference/using-api/api-overview/ https://kubernetes.io/docs/reference/

- **Kind:** This field defines the object type. Here it is ServiceAccount because ServiceAccount was created for Tiller to make a connection with the Kubernetes API server.
- Name: We are using name as tiller.
- **Namespace:** This field defines the namespace for the cluster role binding; e.g., kube-system.

Please see Figure 4-8.

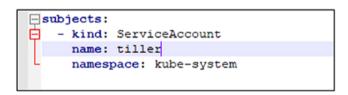


Figure 4-8. tiller-helm.yaml file walkthrough

**Step 2:** Use the following command to create the cluster role shown in Figure 4-9:

\$ kubectl create -f tiller-helm.yaml

```
[root@k8s-master ~] # kubectl create -f tiller-helm.yaml
serviceaccount/tiller created
clusterrolebinding.rbac.authorization.k8s.io/tiller created
```

#### Figure 4-9. Configuring role for installing Tiller

**Step 3:** Once the service account is created, deploy Tiller to your cluster and assign it the service account you just created.

```
$ helm init --service-account tiller --history-max 200
```

The --service-account flag signifies that Tiller should run under the tiller service account previously created. The --history-max flag specifies the maximum number of objects Helm persists in its history.

If this flag isn't specified, history objects are not purged. Over a period of time, this can build up to a huge number of objects in your cluster and thereby make administration tasks difficult. Please refer to Figure 4-10.

```
[root@k@s-master -]# helm init --service-account tiller --history-max 200
Creating /root/.helm/repository
Creating /root/.helm/repository/local
Creating /root/.helm/repository/local
Creating /root/.helm/repository/local
Creating /root/.helm/repository/repository/
Creating /root/.helm/cache/archive
Creating /root/.helm/repository/repository/repository.
Creating /root/.helm/repository/repository.
Creating /root/.helm/repository/repository.
Creating /root/.helm/repository/repository.
Creating /root/.helm/repository/repository.
Creating /root/.helm/repository/repository.
Creating /root/.helm/repository/repository.
Creating /root/.helm/repository.
Creating /root/.helm/repository.
Creating /root/.helm/repository.
Creating /root/.helm/repository.
Adding local repo with URL: http://127.0.0.1:8879/charts
SHEIAH_HOME has been configured at /root/.helm.
Tiller (the Helm server-side component) has been installed into your Kubernetes Cluster.
Please note: by default, Tiller is deployed with an insecure 'allow unauthenticated users' policy.
To prevent this, run 'helm init' with the --tiller-tis-verify flag.
For more information on securing your installation sec: https://docs.helm.sh/using_helm/$securing-your-helm-installation
```

# Figure 4-10. Installing Tiller

**Step 4:** Run the following command on the master node under /home/ Prometheus. You should now see both the client and the server version information, as shown in Figure 4-11.

\$helm version

```
[root@k0s-master ~]$ helm version
Client: &version.Version(SemVer:"v2.16.0-rc.2", GitCommit:"el3bc94621d4ef666270cfbe734aaabf342a49bb", GitTreeState:"clean")
Server: &version.Version(SemVer:"v2.16.0-rc.2", GitCommit:"el3bc94621d4ef666270cfbe734aaabf342a49bb", GitTreeState:"clean")
```

Figure 4-11. Verifying Helm version

# **Exporters**

An exporter helps in fetching the state/logs/metrics from the application/ Kubernetes service and providing data to Prometheus. This concept is similar to that of adapters or plugins in other monitoring tools available in the market. Prometheus provides a list of official and externally contributed exporters. Let's explore some of these exporters, which are useful for container infrastructure monitoring:

https://prometheus.io/docs/instrumenting/exporters/

# **Node Exporter**

Node Exporter is a Prometheus exporter for fetching metrics for hardware and OS metrics exposed by Unix/Linux kernels. It is written in Go language with pluggable metric collectors. Collectors differ as per operating system type. Table 4-1 provides a few examples.

Name	Description	0S
Arp	Exposes ARP statistics from /proc/net/arp	Linux
Boottime	Exposes system boot time derived from kern.boottime sysctl	Darwin, Dragonfly, FreeBSD, NetBSD, OpenBSD, Solaris
Сри	Exposes CPU statistics	Darwin, Dragonfly, FreeBSD, Linux, Solaris
Cpufreq	Exposes CPU frequency statistics	Linux, Solaris
Diskstats	Exposes disk I/O statistics	Darwin, Linux, OpenBSD
Filesystem	Exposes filesystem statistics, such as disk space used	Darwin, Dragonfly, FreeBSD, Linux, OpenBSD
Hwmon	Exposes hardware monitoring and sensor data from /sys/class/hwmon/	Linux
Meminfo	Exposes memory statistics	Darwin, Dragonfly, FreeBSD, Linux, OpenBSD
Netclass	Exposes network interface info from /sys/ class/net/	Linux

Table 4-1. Types of Collectors

(continued)

<i>Table 4-1.</i>	(continued)
-------------------	-------------

Name	Description	OS
netdev	Exposes network interface statistics such as bytes transferred	Darwin, Dragonfly, FreeBSD, Linux, OpenBSD
netstat	Exposes network statistics from /proc/ net/netstat. This is the same information as netstat -s.	Linux
Nfs	Exposes NFS client statistics from /proc/ net/rpc/nfs. This is the same information as nfsstat -c.	Linux
Nfsd	Exposes NFS kernel server statistics from /proc/net/rpc/nfsd. This is the same information as nfsstat -s.	Linux
uname	Exposes system information as provided by the uname system call	Darwin, FreeBSD, Linux, OpenBSD

Now, let's start with configuring Node Exporter on the environment we set up in the previous chapter. We will install Node Exporter on the Kubernetes master node (10.1.150.126) using Helm.

**Step 1:** Log in to the Kubernetes master node (10.1.150.126), navigate to the /home/prometheus folder, and execute the following command. It will download the exporter from the GitHub URL given below, as shown in Figure 4-12.

\$ helm install --name node-exporter stable/prometheus-nodeexporter

https://github.com/helm/charts/tree/master/stable/prometheusnode-exporter

[root@k8s-master prometheus]# helm install --name node-exporter stable/prometheus-node-exporter NAME: node-exporter LAST DEPLOYED: Tue Nov 12 15:10:28 2019 NAMESPACE: default STATUS: DEPLOYED RESOURCES: ==> v1/ClusterRole NAME AGE psp-node-exporter-prometheus-node-exporter <invalid> ==> v1/ClusterRoleBindina NAME AGE psp-node-exporter-prometheus-node-exporter <invalid> ==> v1/DaemonSet NAME AGE node-exporter-prometheus-node-exporter <invalid> => v1/Pod(related) NAME AGE node-exporter-prometheus-node-exporter-p2b5j <invalid> node-exporter-prometheus-node-exporter-t5pr6 <invalid> => v1/Service NAME AGE node-exporter-prometheus-node-exporter <invalid>

## Figure 4-12. Configuring Node Exporter

**Step 2:** Now, let's verify the Node Exporter service is running by executing the following command from the /home/prometheus folder. The node-exporter-prometheus-node-exporter service should be visible in a running state, as highlighted in Figure 4-13. Also note the cluster IP address for the service, as it will be used in the next step.

## \$kubectl get svc

[root@k8s-master prometheus]# kubectl g MAME	TYPE	CLUSTER-IP	EXTERNAL-IP	PORT(S)	AGE
rontend	NodePort	10.105.20.144	<none></none>	80:30186/TCP	7d19h
cubernetes	ClusterIP	10.96.0.1	<none></none>	443/TCP	12d
ivbloa-wordpress	NodePort	10.105.37.135	<none></none>	8081:31000/TCP.443:31020/TCP	4d23l
node-exporter-prometheus-node-exporter	ClusterIP	10.102.155.199	<none></none>	9100/TCP	225
edis-master	ClusterIP	10.102.38.252	<none></none>	6379/TCP	/d19/
redis-slave	ClusterIP	10.108.54.154	<none></none>	6379/TCP	7d19

## Figure 4-13. Verifying Node Exporter status

**Step 3:** The next step is to configure Node Exporter. Navigate to the /home/prometheus folder on the master Kubernetes node and open the config-map.yml file. Under the scarpe\_config section find the job\_name: node-exporter section and details for the job name and static configs, as shown in Figure 4-14.

```
- job_name: node-exporter
    static_configs:
    - targets: ['10.102.155.199:9100']
```

# Figure 4-14. Node Exporter section

- **job\_name:** This field represents the job name for Node Exporter. In this example, we are using node-exporter as job\_name.
- **static\_configs:** This section has a subsection named targets in it. Targets refers to the job target, which is 10.102.155.199 (cluster IP) and 9100, which is the service port on which the Node Exporter service is running. You can use the following command to verify your cluster IP and port information, as shown in Figure 4-15.

\$ kubectl get svc

[root@k8s-master prometheus]# kubect]	get svc				
NAME	TYPE	CLUSTER-IP	EXTERNAL-IP	PORT(S)	AGE
frontend	NodePort	10.105.20.144	<none></none>	80:30186/TCP	7d19h
kubernetes	ClusterIP	10.96.0.1	<none></none>	443/TCP	12d
mvbloa-wordpress	NodePort	10.105.37.135	<none></none>	8081:31000/TCP.443:31020/TCP	4d23h
node-exporter-prometheus-node-exporter	ClusterIP	10.102.155.199	<none></none>	9100/TCP	225
redis-master	ClusterIP	10.102.38.252	<none></none>	6379/TCP	/d19h
redis-slave	ClusterIP	10.108.54.154	<none></none>	6379/TCP	7d19h

Figure 4-15. Verifying Node Exporter status

**Step 3:** Execute the following commands to reflect the Prometheus config map changes made in previous steps:

```
kubectl delete configmaps prometheus-server-conf -n=monitoring
kubectl create -f config-map.yaml
kubectl delete deployment prometheus-deployment -n monitoring
kubectl apply -f prometheus-deployment.yaml -n monitoring
```

**Step 4:** Verify Node Exporter's status from within the Prometheus UI by logging in and navigating to Status and then to Targets (http://masternodeip:30000)

Search for node-exporter on the page and verify that its state is UP, as shown in Figure 4-16.



*Figure 4-16.* Verifying Node Exporter status on Prometheus console

**Step 5:** Now, let's execute a query to start collecting and displaying the node metrics. Click on the Graph tab. In the Expression section, in the text box, write node\_load15 and click on the Execute button, as shown in Figure 4-17.

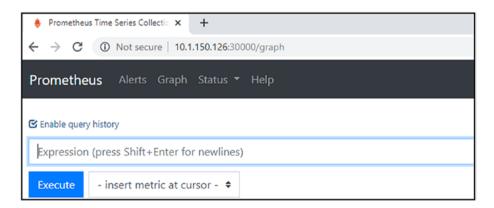


Figure 4-17. Node Exporter-based query sample

You will see a graph showing metrics similar to the one shown in Figure 4-18.

	theus Time Series (			+		
No.				at=1h&g0.expr=node_load1	5&g0.tab=0	
Promet	heus Alert	s Graph Status <del>*</del>	нер			
🕑 Enable qi						
node_lo	ad15					
Execute	- insert m	netric at cursor - 🗢				
Graph	Console					
	- 1h	+ 4	Until	H Res. (s)	stacked	
0.38 1						
0.36						
			L I			
0.34			1.			
0.32	M		U			
0.3	NY	MV ]	u			
	W	4				
0.28 -		<u>ч</u>				

Figure 4-18. Node Exporter-based graph

Node Exporter is primarily used to monitor infrastructure elements of containers and not processes/services. Node Exporter is typically run as a privilege user instead of a root user. We will explore some of the key collectors as part of this chapter.

# **CPU Collector**

The metric from the CPU collector is node\_cpu\_seconds\_total, indicating how much time each CPU spent in each mode. Log in to Prometheus and click on the Graph tab. In the Expression section (text box) write the following query and click on the Execute button:

```
node_cpu_seconds_total{cpu="0", mode="idle"}
```

The following are the various aspects of CPU data collected by the CPU collector:

- Latency: Average or maximum delay in CPU scheduler
- Traffic: CPU utilization
- Errors: Processor-specific error events, faulted CPUs
- Saturation: Run-queue length

After execution, you will get the result shown in Figure 4-19.

C Enable query his	tory		
node_cpu_sec	conds_total(cpu="0",mode="idle")		h.
Execute -	insert metric at cursor - 🗢		
Graph Cons	sole		
-	1h 🕂 Until	Res. (s)     Stacked	
1.0692M		_	
1.069M			
1.0688M			

Figure 4-19. CPU collector-based graph

Node Exporter provided the following CPU-based metrics that tell us how many seconds each CPU spent doing each type of work:

```
node_cpu_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="guest"} 0
node_cpu_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="idle"} 2.03442237e+06
node_cpu_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="iowait"} 3522.37
node_cpu_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="irq"} 0.48
node_cpu_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="nice"} 515.56
node cpu seconds total{cpu="0",mode="softirq"} 953.06
```

```
node_cpu_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="steal"} 0
node_cpu_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="system"} 6605.46
```

# **Filesystem Collector**

This collector exposes filesystem statistics, such as disk space used. Log in to Prometheus and click on the Graph tab. In the Expression section (text box), write the following query and click on the Execute button:

```
(node_filesystem_avail_bytes / node_filesystem_size_bytes)
```

node\_filesystem\_avail\_bytes returns the available filesystem space
in bytes for on-root users.

node\_filesystem\_size\_bytes returns the filesystem size in bytes.

After execution, you will get the used disk space in bytes, as shown in Figure 4-20.

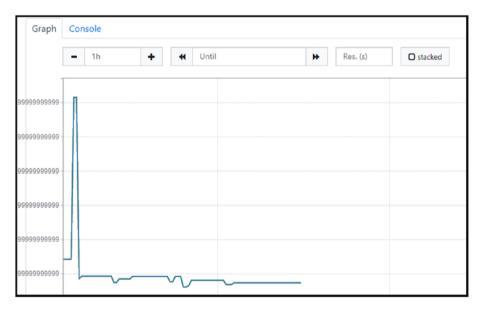


Figure 4-20. Filesystem collector-based graph

# **Diskstats Collector**

This collector exposes disk I/O statistics. Log in to Prometheus and click on the Graph tab. In the Expression section (text box), write the following query and click on the Execute button:

node\_disk\_io\_now

After execution, you will get the result as per Figure 4-21.

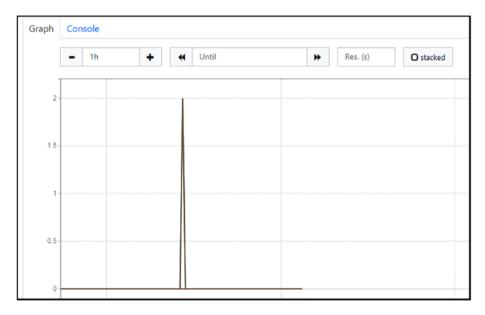


Figure 4-21. Diskstats collector-based graph

# **Netdev Collector**

This collector exposes network interface statistics such as bytes transferred. Log in to Prometheus and click on the Graph tab. In the Expression section (text box), write the following query and click on the Execute button. This query will calculate network bandwidth usage of cluster.

```
rate(node_network_receive_bytes_total[1m])
```

After execution, you will get the result shown in Figure 4-22.

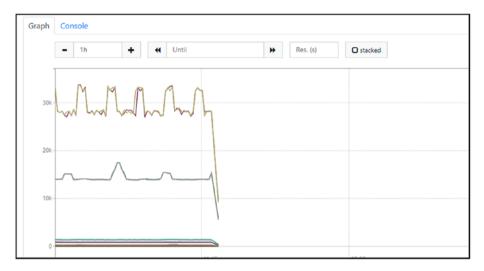


Figure 4-22. Netdev collector-based graph

# **Meminfo Collector**

This collector exposes memory statistics. Log in to Prometheus and click on the Graph tab. In the Expression section (text box), write the following query and click on the Execute button. This query will calculate and show free available memory.

```
node_memory_MemFree_bytes
```

The following are the various aspects of memory data collected by the Meminfo collector:

- Latency: (none—difficult to find a good method of measuring and not actionable)
- Traffic: Amount of memory being used
- Errors: Out-of-memory errors
- Saturation: Out of Memory (OOM) killer events, swap usage

Graph Console - 1h + ( Until ) Res. (s) I stacked 1.3346 1.3320 1.3320 1.3360 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.3560 1.

After execution, you will get the result shown in Figure 4-23.

# Figure 4-23. Meminfo collector-based graph

The following are some useful memory-based metrics provided by Node Exporter:

- node\_memory\_Active\_anon\_bytes (gauge) return memory information field Active\_anon\_bytes
- node\_memory\_Active\_bytes (gauge) return memory information field Active\_bytes
- node\_memory\_Active\_file\_bytes (gauge) return memory information field Active\_file\_bytes

# **Uname Collector**

This collector exposes system information as provided by the uname system call. Log in to Prometheus and click on the Graph tab. In the Expression section (text box), write the following query and click on the Execute button. This query will show the count of machines run, along with the kernel version.

```
count by(release)(node_uname_info) from prometheus GUI.
```

After execution, you will get the result shown in Figure 4-24.

Graph	Console	
2.	- 1h + Until > Res. (s)	stacked
2.		
1.5	5-	
1.		
0.5	5	
	12:00 12:15	12:30
0.	√ ■ (release="node-exporter") √ ■ (release="1.10.0-902.ef"):280_04")	12.30

Figure 4-24. Uname collector-based graph

# cAdvisor Exporter

cAdvisor is an open source container resource usage and performance monitoring exporter. Let's now configure the cAdvisor exporter in our container setup.

**Step 1:** We will configure cAdvisor on the Kubernetes master node (10.1.150.126). Navigate to the /home/prometheus folder and open the config-map.yaml file. Find the section with job\_name: 'kubernetes-cadvisor' and review the following sections:

- **job\_name:** This field defines the job name assigned to scraped metrics; in our case, we use kubernetes-cadvisor as the job name to fetch to gets metrics using the Kubernetes APIs.
- **kubernetes\_sd\_configs:** This field represents a list of Kubernetes service discovery configurations. Kubernetes SD configurations help in fetching targets

from Kubernetes' REST API. We are using nodes in our case because every node has Docker containers that are running under Kubernetes pods, and cAdvisor provides Docker container-related metrics. The node role discovers one target per cluster node.

- **tls\_config:** This field provide details for configuring TLS connections. Under this field there is a subfield for ca\_file. This field provides details of the CA certificate used for API authentication.
- **metrics\_path:** Defined cAdvisor metrics endpoint that is used by Prometheus to collect the container data, as shown in Figure 4-25.

```
- job_name: 'kuberntes-cadvisor'
    kubernetes_sd_configs:
    - role: node
    scheme: https
    tls_config:
        ca_file: /var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/serviceaccount/ca.crt
    metrics_path: /metrics/cadvisor
```

Figure 4-25. Config-map.yaml file review for cAdvisor exporter

**Step 2:** Execute the following commands to apply the changes made to the Prometheus configuration:

```
$kubectl delete configmaps prometheus-server-conf -n=monitoring
$kubectl create -f config-map.yaml
$kubectl delete deployment prometheus-deployment -n monitoring
$kubectl apply -f prometheus-deployment.yaml -n monitoring
```

**Step 3:** To verify that all the components related to Prometheus are running fine, execute the following command, as shown in Figure 4-26:

# \$ kubectl get all -n=monitoring

[root@k8s-master prometheus] NAME pod/alertmanager-564d4884bd pod/prometheus-deployment-56	- mjjft	RE 1/	ADY ST 1 Ru	ring ATUS Inning Inning	RESTARTS 0 0	5 AGE 13d 69m		
NAME service/alertmanager service/prometheus-service	TYPE NodePort NodePort	CLUSTER 10.111. 10.97.1	165.123	EXTER <none <none< td=""><td></td><td>PORT(S) 8080:32 8080:30</td><td></td><td>AGE 13d 13d</td></none<></none 		PORT(S) 8080:32 8080:30		AGE 13d 13d
NAME deployment.apps/alertmanage deployment.apps/prometheus-(	leployment	READY 1/1 1/1	UP-TO-D 1 1	ATE A 1 1	VAILABLE	AGE 13d 69m		
NAME replicaset.apps/alertmanage replicaset.apps/prometheus-c			DESI 1 9 1	RED C	URRENT	READY 1 1	AGE 13d 69m	

Figure 4-26. cAdvisor exporter configuration

Step 4: Log in to Prometheus GUI at http://kubernetes\_master\_ nodeip: 30000.

Click Status, and then choose "Targets." You will find the cAdvisor details as in Figure 4-27. Here, the number of endpoints depends on the number of nodes in the Kubernetes cluster, as shown in Figure 4-27.

Endpoint	State	Labels	Last Scrape	Scrape Duration	Error
https://kubernetes.default.svc:443/api/v1/ nodes/devops0088/proxy/metrics/cadvis or	UP	beta.kubernetes.jo.arch="amd64" beta_kubernetes.jo.os="linua" instance="decops0088" job="kubernetes.co.arch="amd64" kubernetes.jo.jo.arch="decops00087" kubernetes.jo.jo.os="linua"	1.607s ago	53.3ms	
https://kubernetes.default.svc:443/api/v1/ nodes/k8s-master/proxy/metrics/cadviso r	UP	beta, kubernetes, jo, jarcha "amd64" beta, kubernetes, jo, jos * "linus" [instances" kBs-master"] [jobs "kubernetes-cadvisor"] [kubernetes, jo, joka-"amd64" [kubernetes, jo, josa-"linus"] [kubernetes, jo, josa-"linus"]	2.926s ago	66.63ms	

Figure 4-27. cAdvisor exporter verification

In our example, we are using a two-node cluster.

**Step 5:** Click the Graph tab in the Prometheus GUI and execute the following query to view the cumulative count of reads merged:

container\_fs\_reads\_merged\_total

After executing the query, you will see the result, as per Figure 4-28.

Prometheus Time Series Colle	stic × +							-	ø
→ C ▲ Not secu	re   10.1.150.126/30000/	raph?g0.range_inp	out=1h&g0.expr=cont	ainer_fs_reads_merged_total8	tg0.tab=0		¢ 🚺	0	Θ
rometheus Alerts									
Enable query history								Load tim	r film
container_fs_reads_merg	ged_total					С 4		Resolution Total time	en: 14s
Execute - insert met	ric at cursor - 🏼 🕈								
Graph Console									
- 1h	+ 🕂 Until		Hes. (	s) O stacked					
- 1h	+ + Until		PP Nes. (	U stacked					
1									]
0.5									
0									
-0.5									
									PM

Figure 4-28. cAdvisor exporter-based filesystem read graph

**Step 6:** Execute the following query to get the CPU usage by Kubernetes namespaces:

sum(rate(container\_cpu\_usage\_seconds\_total{container\_ name!="POD",namespace!=""}[5m])) by (namespace)

After executing the query, you will see the result as per Figure 4-29.

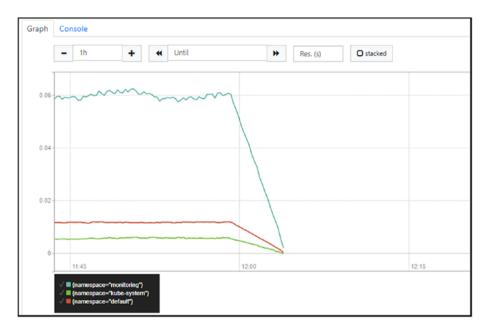


Figure 4-29. cAdvisor exporter-based CPU usage graph

**Step 7:** Execute the following query to get the ICMP statistics:

node\_netstat\_Icmp\_InMsgs

After executing the query, you will see the result as shown in Figure 4-30.

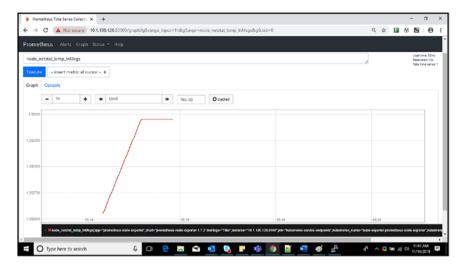


Figure 4-30. cAdvisor exporter-based ICMP stats graph

**Step 8:** Execute the following command to get a list of currently opened connections:

## node\_netstat\_Tcp\_ActiveOpens

After executing the query, you will see the result shown in Figure 4-31.

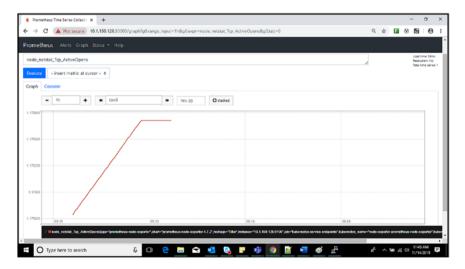


Figure 4-31. cAdvisor exporter-based open connection graph

# **Azure Monitor Exporter**

The Azure Monitor exporter is used for exporting metrics from Azure applications using the Azure Monitor API. Now, let's configure an Azure container cluster and see how we can monitor it using Prometheus and leveraging the Azure Monitor exporter.

**Step 1:** This lab step assumes readers have an Azure account set up and have working knowledge of Azure. Log in to your Azure account and navigate to the Azure dashboard. Click on "Create a resource," as shown in Figure 4-32.

=	Microsoft Azure			P Search re	P Search resources, services, and docs (G+/)					0	© ?	٢
	Azure service	s [;;)		<b>.</b>	٠	O	۲					_
	Create a resource	Resource groups	All resources	SQL servers	Azure Active Directory	Security Center	App Services	Virtua machin			orage counts	More

Figure 4-32. Azure Console

Step 2: Select "Kubernetes service" from the Containers section.Step 3: Fill in the details to create the Kubernetes service:Provide resource group name PrometheusPOC, as shown in Figure 4-33.

Create Kubernetes cluster						
Basics Scale Authentication Netw	orking Monitoring Tags Review + create					
Azure Kubernetes Service (AKS) manages yo manage containerized applications without operations and maintenance by provisionin offline. Learn more about Azure Kubernete	A resource group is a container that holds related resources for an Azure solution.	Seploy and Fongoing bur applications				
Project details	Name *					
Select a subscription to manage deployed n your resources.	PrometheusPOC 🗸	and manage all				
Subscription * 🛈		~				
Resource group * ①	OK Cancel	~				
Cr	eate new					
Cluster details						
Kubernetes cluster name * 🛈						
Region * ①	US) Central US	~				

Figure 4-33. Launching Azure AKS instance via Azure Console

Note this value as it will be used in the exporter configuration.

Insert other required inputs like cluster name, location, pool size, etc. We are taking Node Count as "1" in this example, as shown in Figure 4-34.

ubscription * ①	Microsoft Azure	$\sim$
	PrometheusPOC	$\sim$
	Create new	
uster details		
ubernetes cluster name * 🛈	Prometheuscluster	~
egion * 🕕	(US) East US	$\sim$
ubernetes version * 🛈	1.13.12 (default)	$\sim$
NS name prefix * 🛈	Prometheuscluster-dns	~
rimary node pool		
he number and size of nodes in the commended for resiliency. For de ode size after cluster creation, but te additional node pools, you will pools after creating the cluster. Let	te primary node pool in your cluster. For production workloads, at least 3 nodes a welopment or test workloads, only one node is required. You will not be able to cl you will be able to change the number of nodes in your cluster after creation. If y need to enable the "X" feature on the "Scale" tab which will allow you to add mo arn more about node pools in Azure Kubernetes Service	hange the you would
he number and size of nodes in the commended for resiliency. For de ode size after cluster creation, but ke additional node pools, you will	velopment or test workloads, only one node is required. You will not be able to c you will be able to change the number of nodes in your cluster after creation. If y need to enable the "X" feature on the "Scale" tab which will allow you to add mo	hange the you would
he number and size of nodes in the commended for resiliency. For de ode size after cluster creation, but te additional node pools, you will pools after creating the cluster. Let	velopment or test workloads, only one node is required. You will not be able to cl you will be able to change the number of nodes in your cluster after creation. If y need to enable the "X" feature on the "Scale" tab which will allow you to add mo arn more about node pools in Azure Kubernetes Service Standard DS2 v2	hange the you would re node

Figure 4-34. Launching Azure AKS instance via Azure Console

Now, click on the Scale tab and provide scaling settings by enabled VM scale sets, as shown in Figure 4-35.

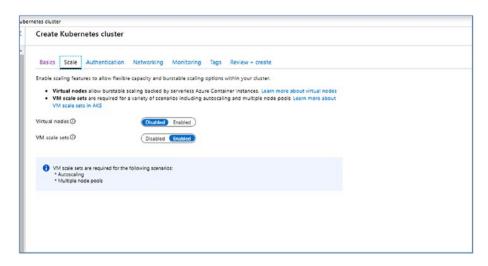


Figure 4-35. Launching Azure AKS instance via Azure Console

Click on the Authentication tab and provide either an existing service principal or create a new one. The service principal should have at least a read role on associated log analytics.

Then click on the Networking tab. Create a new virtual network and subnets, etc., or use the basic configuration, which will create a basic network with the default configuration, as shown in Figure 4-36.

×	Create Kubernetes cluster						
-	Basics Scale Authentication N	letworking Monitoring Tags Review + create					
	You can change networking settings for your cluster, including enabling HTTP application routing and configuring your network using either the 'Basic' or 'Advanced' options:						
	<ul> <li>'Basic' networking creates a new VNet for your cluster using default values.</li> <li>'Advanced networking allows clusters to use a new or existing VNet with customizable addresses. Application pods are connected directly to the VNet, which allows for native integration with VNet features.</li> </ul>						
	Learn more about networking in Azure Ku	bernetes Service					
	HTTP application routing ①	Yes No					
	Load balancer ①	Standard					
	Network configuration ①	O Basic ( Advanced					
	Configure virtual networks						
	Virtual network * ①	(new) PrometheusPOC-vnet					
		Create new					
	Cluster subnet * 🛈	(new) default (10.240.0.0/16)					
	Kubernetes service address range * 🛈	10.0.0/16 🗸					
	Kubernetes DNS service IP address * 🛈	10.0.0.10					
	Docker Bridge address * 🛈	172.17.0.1/16					
	Review + create < Pr	evious Next : Monitoring >					

Figure 4-36. Launching Azure AKS instance via Azure Console

Click on the Monitoring tab and select "Yes" to enable container monitoring. Choose a workspace for the Log Analytics workspace. This workspace is used by Azure to monitor log data. In our example, we select the "DRYICEDEMOIAC" option for Log Analytics workspace, as shown in Figure 4-37.

Create Kube	metes cluster	
×	Create Kubernetes cluste	r
-	Basics Scale Authenticatio	in Networking Monitoring Tags Review + create
	container monitoring capabilities a	u will get CPU and memory usage metrics for each node. In addition, you can enable nd get insights into the performance and health of your entire Kubernetes cluster. You will lata ingested and your data retention settings.
	Learn more about container perform Learn more about pricing	mance and health monitoring
	Azure Monitor	
	Enable container monitoring	No Yes
	Log Analytics workspace 🛈	
		Create new

Figure 4-37. Launching Azure AKS instance via Azure Console

The Review+Create tab gives details about the information and options provided by the user to create the cluster. Now click the Create button to start the process of cluster creation, as shown in Figure 4-38.

Create Kubernetes cluster	
Validation passed	
Basics Scale Authentication	Networking Monitoring Tags Review + create
Basics	
Subscription	Microsoft Azure
Resource group	PrometheusPOC
Region	(US) East US
Kubernetes cluster name	PrometheusCluster
Kubernetes version	1.13.12
DNS name prefix	PrometheusCluster-dns
Node count	1
Node size	Standard_DS2_v2
Scale	
Virtual nodes	Disabled
VM scale sets	Enabled
Authentication	
Enable RBAC	Yes
Networking	

Figure 4-38. Launching Azure AKS instance via Azure Console

**Step 4:** After cluster creation, we will see the screen shown in Figure 4-39, which verifies the successful creation of the Azure AKS through Azure Console. We can see that a cluster by the name of PrometheusCluster is displayed on the Azure Console screen.

Microsoft Azure		Search resources, services, and docs (G+/)							jay.shmastava	edrytce.
Home > Resource groups > PrometheusPOC										1999 / 1964 P
Resource groups « X DRYCE-Technology	PrometheusPOC									
+ Add III Edit columns ···· More	,O. Search (Ort+,)	+ Add 🗮 Edit columns 📵 Delete resource group	C) Refresh	$\rightarrow$ Move	¥ I	Export to C	sv	🖗 Assign tag	s 🗐 Delete	N
Fiter by name	M Overview	Subscription (change) Microsoft Azure			loymen cceede					
Name 1:	Activity log	Subscription ID								
(iii) Drytce ···· *	Access control (IAM)	31853c29-19c0-42b1-9fba-a16a407dec06								
(e) GET-AUTO-RG ····	Tags	Tagt (change) Click here to add tags								
(e) GET_AUTO_RG ····	+ Events									
(9) ing_resource ····	Settings	Filter by name	0 lk 1	Ty Add fit	er)					
(9) MC_PrometheusPOC_PrometheusCI	4 Qvidstert	Showing 1 to 1 of 1 records. Show hidden types ③						No	grouping	
(e) mycloud ····	Resource costs	Name t		Туре	†4			Location	78	
(e) MyCloud09Aug ····	Deployments	OrenetheusCluster		Kuber	netes se	envice		East US		
(w) MyCloudRG ····	Policies									
(w) myResourceGroup ····	-									
NetworkWatcherR5	Properties A Locks									

Figure 4-39. Verifying Azure AKS instance via Azure Console

After clicking on PrometheusCluster, the information related to the cluster is shown, as in Figure 4-40. Information would contain information like resource group name, location, tags, etc.

Microsoft Azure		,P. Search resources, services, and docs (G+,/)					۲		vijayshrivast
Home > PrometheusCluster									
PrometheusCluster									
,0 Search (Col+/)	→ Move 🔋 Delete	🕐 Refresh							
Overview	Resource group (change)		Kubernetes version	: 1.1					
Activity log		Succeeded East US	API server address HTTP application routin			uscluster	r-dns-73	91c5ce.hc	pleastus azmkõs id
Access control (IAM)	Subscription (change)	Microsoft Azure	Node pools	:1:	node po	ols			
🖗 Tags	Subscription ID	3/353c29-H9c0-42b1-9fba-a/6a407ded06							
Diagnose and solve problems	Tags (change)	Description : Prometheus POC on Kubernetes							
Settings			٨						
🔀 Node pools									
0 Upgrade		Monitor containers	D View logs						
Scale		Get health and performance insights Go to Azure Monitor insights	Search and analyze		using ac	i-hoc qu	eries		
A Networking		Go to Adure Monitor insights	Go to Aquite Might tor	logs					
& Dev Spaces									
E Deployment center (preview)									
Policies (preview)									
Properties									

Figure 4-40. Verifying Azure AKS instance via Azure Console

**Step 5:** Now we will use the PowerShell AZ module to check nodes associated with the Kubernetes cluster. For this step, we will assume readers have PowerShell set up for Azure access. First, log in to the Azure PowerShell module using your credentials. Then, execute the following command to get the details of the nodes. For arguments, use the values used for provisioning the cluster in the previous step. You will need a Windows system with the PowerShell module installed on it to proceed, as shown in Figure 4-41.

az aks get-credentials --resource-group PrometheusPOC -name
PrometheusCluster

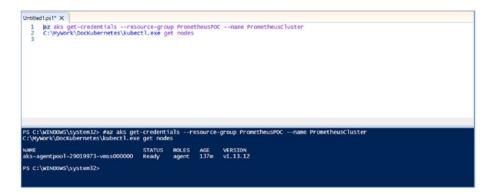


Figure 4-41. Configuring Azure Powershell module for Azure AKS

**Step 6:** Now we will push an application on Azure AKS. For this exercise, we will leverage a sample Azure voting application. The following is the URL for GitHub from which the container image will be pulled:

https://github.com/Azure-Samples/azure-voting-app-redis

**Step 7:** Create the namespace ms-votefront using the following command:

```
Kubectl create ns ms-votefront
```

**Step 8:** Check the associated nodes by executing the following command, as shown in Figure 4-42:

kubectl get ns

PS C:\Mywork	DocKubern	etes\Git\azure-voting-app-redis> kubectl get ns
NAME	STATUS	AGE
default	Active	5h33m
kube-public	Active	5h33m
kube-system	Active	5h33m
ms-votefront	Active	225
sock-shop	Active	3h21m

*Figure 4-42.* Namespace verification for container application deployment on Azure AKS

**Step 9:** Now let's apply the image to the Kubernetes cluster using the following command, as shown in Figure 4-43:

kubectl apply -f azure-vote-all-in-one-redis.yaml

```
PS C:\MyWork\DocKubernetes\Git\azure-voting-app-redis> kubectl apply -f azure-vote-all-in-one-redis.yaml
deployment.apps/azure-vote-back created
service/azure-vote-back created
deployment.apps/azure-vote-front created
service/azure-vote-front created
```

Figure 4-43. Deployment of container application on Azure AKS

**Step 10:** Check the status and browser load balancer IP by executing the following command, as shown in Figure 4-44:

kubectl get all -n ms-votefront

NAME		EADY STATUS		AGE	ont
ood/azure-vote-back-847fc ood/azure-vote-front-5d94		/1 Running /1 Running		2m57s 2m56s	
subect1 :	JU47 57 - 2 5 4 0 1 - 1	./ x Kunning	•	2	
t line:1 char:1					
kubectl get all -n ms-					
				(1997) (1997) (1997) (1997) (1997) (1997) (1997) (1997) (1997) (1997) (1997) (1997) (1997) (1997) (1997) (1997)	
+ CategoryInfo + FullyQualifiedError:	: NotSpecifie	ed: (:String) [	], RemoteExcep	tion	
+ FullyqualifiedError.	IG : Nativecomma	INGELLOL			
AME	TYPE	CLUSTER-IP	EXTERNAL-IP	PORT(S)	AGE
		CLUSTER-IP 10.0.119.73	EXTERNAL-IP <none></none>	PORT(S) 6379/TCP	AGE 2m57s
ervice/azure-vote-back	ClusterIP				
ervice/azure-vote-back ervice/azure-vote-front AME	ClusterIP LoadBalancer READY	10.0.119.73	<none> 40.88.19.79 AVAILABLE A</none>	6379/TCP 80:30980/TCP IGE	2m57s
ervice/azure-vote-back ervice/azure-vote-front AME eployment.apps/azure-vote	ClusterIP LoadBalancer READY e-back 1/1	10.0.119.73 10.0.243.189	<none> 40.88.19.79 AVAILABLE A 1 2</none>	6379/TCP 80:30980/TCP IGE Im58s	2m57s
ervice/azure-vote-back ervice/azure-vote-front AME leployment.apps/azure-vote leployment.apps/azure-vote	ClusterIP LoadBalancer READY e-back 1/1	10.0.119.73 10.0.243.189 UP-TO-DATE 1 1	<none> 40.88.19.79 AVAILABLE A 1 2 1 2</none>	6379/TCP 80:30980/TCP GE m58s m57s	2m57s
ervice/azure-vote-back ervice/azure-vote-front AME leployment.apps/azure-vote eployment.apps/azure-vote AME	ClusterIP LoadBalancer READY e-back 1/1 e-front 1/1	10.0.119.73 10.0.243.189 UP-TO-DATE 1 1 DESIRED	<none> 40.88.19.79 AVAILABLE A 1 2</none>	6379/TCP 80:30980/TCP GE m58s m57s DY AGE	2m57s
WAME service/azure-vote-back service/azure-vote-front WAME leployment.apps/azure-vote leployment.apps/azure-vote eplicaset.apps/azure-vote eplicaset.apps/azure-vote	ClusterIP LoadBalancer READY e-back 1/1 e-front 1/1 e-back-847fc9bcb	10.0.119.73 10.0.243.189 UP-TO-DATE 1 1 DESIRED 9 1	<none> 40.88.19.79 AVAILABLE A 1 2 1 2</none>	6379/TCP 80:30980/TCP GE m58s m57s	2m57s

Figure 4-44. Verification of container application on Azure AKS

**Step 11:** Open the browser and type the IP address of the load balancer to verify the application is working, as shown in Figure 4-45.

C ( Not secure   40.88.19.79	
	Azure Voting App
	Cats
	Dogs
	Reset
	Cats - 6   Dogs - 6

Figure 4-45. Verification of container application on Azure AKS

**Step 12:** To view the log, navigate to the Azure home page and click "Log Analytics workspaces," as shown in Figure 4-46.

=	Microsoft Azure Search resources, services, and docs (G+/)				
		Azure servic	<mark>es</mark>		
		+			[]
		Create a resource	Log Analytics workspaces	All resources	Resource groups
		Recent resou	irces		

Figure 4-46. Log Analytics workspaces

**Step 13:** Once the Log Analytics workspaces page has opened, click the DRYICEDEMOIAC workspace as shown in Figure 4-47.

Home >	
Log Analytics workspaces DRYCE-Technology	
+ Add 🕚 Recover 🛞 Manage view 🗸 🖒 Refresh 🛓 Export to CSV   🤭 Assign tags   🛇 Fee	dback
Filter by name	(+ <sub>∀</sub> Add filter
Showing 1 to 1 of 1 records.	
Name 🗘	Resource group ↑↓
	Drylce

Figure 4-47. Log Analytics workspaces page

Now, click the "Logs" option, as shown in Figure 4-48, to see the Azure AKS logs.

Figure 4-48. Logs

**Step 14:** Once the Logs page opens you can run the various queries to see the AKS cluster log. In our example, we type query ContainerLog in the query text box to see all the container logs running in our AKS cluster, then click the Run button, as shown in Figure 4-49. This query will return the deployed application container logs, such as details of the deployed Docker image, HTTP request request(GET, POST) handled by the application container, etc.

	Microsoft Azure			P Search re	sources, acrvices, and docs (G-,/)		? 😁 vyayshi	ретсьписникова
me	> DRVICEDEMolAc - Logs							
	DRYICEDEMolAc - Logs log Analytics vortageos							\$
<b>P</b> 1	New Query 1* +				i He	lo 🧐 Setting	is 8≓ Sample querie	s 🕞 Query explor
rom	etheuscluster Select	Scope D	Run	Time range : Last 24 hours	🗟 Save 🕫 G	ipy I Export	t + New alert rule	🖈 Pin to dashboar
*	Containeriog							,
	Completed. Showing results		ours.				ල් 00:00:02.085 ලි Displa	
	Drag a column header and drop	t here to group by th	at column					
	TimeSenerated (Chern., V	Computer V	V Cort. V	Image VVV	7 V Logtrey	Ύь	ogônt V Type	♀ ResourceId
10	> 11/29/2019, 5:52:29.227 PM	aks acentocol	1 70905	microsoft/azure-vote-frontiv1	2 10.244.0.1 - [29/New/2019:12:22:29 +0000] "POST / HTTP/1.1" 200 950 "http://40.88.19	79/11Mozist	scout ContainerLo	g /subscriptions/31
	> 11/29/2019, 5:52:29:225 PM		1 70905	microsof6/azure-vote-front/a1	2 (pid: 14(app: 0)vep; 5/11) 10.244.0.1 () (55 vars in 966 bytes) (fri Nov 29 12:22:29 20:9) PC	15T / =0.00 st	tderr ContainerLo	g /subscriptions/318
Colhan		alts-apentpool		microsoft/azure-vote-frontsv1	2 (pic: Hilapp: Over: 5/11) 10.244.0.1 () (35 vans in 966 bytes) (Fri Nov 29 12.22.29 2019) PC 2 (pic: Hilapp: Over: 6/10) 10.244.0.1 () (56 vans in 966 bytes) (Fri Nov 29 12.22.27 2019) P			-
Columna	> 11/29/2019, 5:52:29:225 PM	aks-agentpool aks-agentpool	1 70965			25T / =u00 st		g /swbscriptions/318
Cehoma and E	<ul> <li>11/29/2019, 5:52:29:225 PM</li> <li>11/29/2019, 5:52:27:429 PM</li> </ul>	alts-apentpool alts-apentpool alts-apentpool	1 709b5	microsoft/azure-vote-frontev1	2 (pid: 14(app: 0)reg: 8/10) 10.244.0.1 () (56 vars in 966 byte:) (Fri Nev 29 12:22:27 2019) P	25T / =u00 st 79/~ "Meal st	tderr ContainerLo tdout ContainerLo	g /subscriptions/318 g /subscriptions/318
Cehoma and Ellin	<ul> <li>10/29/2019, 552:29:225 PM</li> <li>10/29/2019, 552:27:429 PM</li> <li>10/29/2019, 552:27:429 PM</li> </ul>	aks-agentpool aks-agentpool aks-agentpool aks-agentpool	1 70905 1 70905 1 70905	microsoft/azure-vete-frontiv1 microsoft/azure-vete-frontiv1	<ol> <li>(pid: M(app: 0)rog: 6/10) 10.244.0.1 () (56 vars in 966 byted) (Fri Nev 29 1222.27 2019) Pr</li> <li>10.244.0.1 - (29/New/2019/1222.27 +0000] "POST / HTTP/L1" 200 950 "http://w0.06.19</li> </ol>	05T/=u00 st 79/ <sup></sup> 'Meal st 5T/=u003 st	tderr ContainerLo tdout ContainerLo tderr ContainerLo	g /subscriptions/318 g /subscriptions/318 g /subscriptions/318
Column and Ellers	<ul> <li>10/29/2019, 5:52:29.225 PM</li> <li>10/29/2019, 5:52:27.429 PM</li> <li>10/29/2019, 5:52:27.429 PM</li> <li>10/29/2019, 5:52:27.429 PM</li> </ul>	als-agentpool als-agentpool als-agentpool als-agentpool als-agentpool	1 70905 1 70905 1 70905 1 70905	microsoft/azure-vote-frontor1 microsoft/azure-vote-frontor1 microsoft/azure-vote-frontor1	2 (pilet 14)app: Opeop 6/10) 10.244.0.1 () (56 vars in 966 bynet) (Fri Nev 29 12:22:27 2016) N 2 10.244.0.1 - ( ph/Neu/2019-12:2:27 +0000) "POST / HTTP/1.1 200 990 'mttp://40.04.19 2 (pilet 14)app: Opeop 7/9) 10.244.0.1 () (56 vars in 966 bytet) (Fri Nev 29 12:22:24 2019) PO	05T / =u00 st 79/* "Meal st 5T / =u003 st 79/* "Meal st	tderr ContainerLo tdout ContainerLo tderr ContainerLo tdeut ContainerLo	<ul> <li>/subscriptions/318</li> <li>/subscriptions/318</li> <li>/subscriptions/318</li> <li>/subscriptions/318</li> </ul>
Cehama and Ellar	<ul> <li>TU/29/2019, 5:52:29:225 PM</li> <li>TU/29/2019, 5:52:27:429 PM</li> <li>TU/29/2019, 5:52:27:429 PM</li> <li>TU/29/2019, 5:52:25:195 PM</li> <li>TU/29/2019, 5:52:25:195 PM</li> <li>TU/29/2019, 5:52:25:195 PM</li> </ul>	aks-apentpool aks-apentpool aks-apentpool aks-apentpool aks-apentpool	1 70965 1 70965 1 70965 1 70965 1 70965	microsoft/azure-vote-frontiv1 microsoft/azure-vote-frontiv1 microsoft/azure-vote-frontiv1 microsoft/azure-vote-frontiv1	2 (pict Hipps Oyee 6/1) (1524-6.1 () (56 var in 566 byted (F) Nev 29 152227 2016) (F 2 (5246.1 - (29)Hew/2016/52227 +0000) (F057 / HTP/I F 206 560 http://46.8.18 2 (pict Hipps Oyee 7/9) 1524-6.1 () (56 vars in 566 byted) (Fi Nev 29 152226 2016) FO 2 (524-6.1 - (29)Hew/2019/52226 +0000) (F057 / HTP/I F 20 550 http://46.8.8	OST / =u00 st 79/^ "Meal st ST / =u003 st 79/^ "Meal st ST / =u003 st	téerr ContainerLo téout ContainerLo téerr ContainerLo téout ContainerLo téerr ContainerLo	<ul> <li>/subscriptions/318</li> <li>/subscriptions/318</li> <li>/subscriptions/318</li> <li>/subscriptions/318</li> <li>/subscriptions/318</li> </ul>
Schema and Filter	TV29/2019, 552:29.225 PM     TV29/2019, 552:27.429 PM     TV29/2019, 552:27.429 PM     TV29/2019, 552:27.429 PM     TV29/2019, 552:25.105 PM     TV29/2019, 552:25.105 PM     TV29/2019, 552:25.105 PM	aks-apentpool aks-apentpool aks-apentpool aks-apentpool aks-apentpool	1 70905 1 70905 1 70905 1 70905 1 70905 1 70905	microsoft/azure-vote-frontor/ microsoft/azure-vote-frontor/ microsoft/azure-vote-frontor/ microsoft/azure-vote-frontor/ microsoft/azure-vote-frontor/	2 (pice Mappo Opene (M1) 19244.0.1 (p 64 vers) in 966 hytel (M1 Nev 29 122227 2010) M 2 (12344.0.1 - (241mar/2019 12223 - 0000) '0007 / 10171 / 201950 mmp/2014.0.10 2 (pice Mappo Opene 70) 10244.0.1 (p 56 vers) 656 hytel (M1 Nev 29 122226 2011) PO 10344.0.1 - (241mar/2019 12223 - 0000) '0047 / 10171 / 201950 mmp/2014.0.10 1 (pice T0lapso Opene 2010) 10244.0.1 (p 56 vers) 656 hytel (M1 Nev 29 122202 2011) PO	OST / =v00 st 79/~ 'Meal st ST / =v003 st 79/~ 'Meal st ST / =v003 st 79/~ 'Meal st	téerr ContainerLo téout ContainerLo téerr ContainerLo téout ContainerLo téerr ContainerLo	<ul> <li>/vubscriptions/318</li> <li>/vubscriptions/318</li> <li>/vubscriptions/318</li> <li>/vubscriptions/318</li> <li>/vubscriptions/318</li> <li>/vubscriptions/318</li> <li>/vubscriptions/318</li> </ul>

*Figure 4-49. Verification of container application metrics via Azure Console* 

**Step 15:** The Prometheus Azure exporter is based on Go language. To configure the same we would require Go language. So, let's download and install the Go language binary archive file using the following command, as shown in Figure 4-50.

wget https://dl.google.com/go/go1.13.3.linux-amd64.tar.gz

[root0k8s-master home]# wget https://dl.google.com/go/gol.13.3.linux-and64.tar.gz						
2019-12-02 18:26:54 - https://dl.google.com/go/gol.13.3.11nux-and64.tar.gz Resolving dl.google.com/dl.google.com/s.173.194.129.190.173.194.19.91.173.194.219.93						
Resolving di.google.com (di.google.com): 1/3.194.219.309, 1/3.194.219.309, 1/3.194.219.393, 1/3.194.219.395,						
HTTP request sent, avaiting response 200 OK						
Length: 120055279 (1144) [āpplication/octet-stream] Savino to: "ool.13.3.iinux-and64.tar.oz"						
Saving to: _gol.13.3.11nux-ando4.tar.gz						
100%[						
2019-12-02 18:27:12 (7.42 MB/s) - 'gol.13.3.linux-amd64.tar.gz' saved [120055279/120055279]						
[root0k8s-master home]# ]]						
total 117256						
drux 15 admin admin 4096 Jul 3 00:02 admin						
r-xr-x. 1 root root 633 Nov 24 22:14 deployment.yml						
-rw-rr 1 root root 120055279 Oct 18 04:07 gol.13.3.1inux-amd64.tar.gz						
drwx 3 root root 78 Jul 2 23:59 monitor						
draxr-xr-x. 7 root root 4096 Nov 20 16:23 prometheus						

## Figure 4-50. Download package for Go installation

For this command, download Go Linux version 1.13.3 from the following link: https://dl.google.com.

**Step 16:** Extract the downloaded archive and install it in the /usr/local Linux directory. You can also install this under the home directory (for shared hosting) or other location.

```
tar -xzf go1.13.3.linux-amd64.tar.gz
```

After extracting go1.13.3.linux-amd64.tar.gz move all the directories and files related to the Go language to /usr/local by using the mv command:

```
mv go /usr/local
```

**Step 17:** Now we need to set up the Go language environment variables for your project. Commonly, you need to set three environment variables: GOROOT, GOPATH, and PATH. GOROOT is the location where the Go package is installed on your system.

```
export GOROOT=/usr/local/go
```

Now set the PATH variable to access Go binary systemwide using the following command:

```
export PATH=$GOPATH/bin:$GOROOT/bin:$PATH
```

All the preceding environment setup will be set for your current session only. To make it permanent, add the preceding commands in the ~/.bash\_profile file.

With this step, you have successfully installed and configured Go language on your system. Verify the setup by using the following command to check the Go version:

### go version

**Step 18:** Clone the Azure exporter by executing the following inline command in the Kubernetes master server (10.1.150.126) from the home/prometheus directory:

```
git clone https://github.com/RobustPerception/azure_metrics_
exporter.git
```

**Step 19:** Navigate to the azure\_metrics\_exporter directory and create the azure.yaml file and copy the following content. You can download the sample Azure.yml file from the following link as well: https://github.com/RobustPerception/azure\_metrics\_exporter/blob/master/azure-example.yml. Add the details of your Azure subscription and credentials in the following section in the file (highlighted):

```
---
active_directory_authority_url: "https://login.
microsoftonline.com/"
resource_manager_url: "https://management.azure.com/"
credentials:
    subscription_id: <secret>
    client_id: <secret>
    client_secret: <secret>
    tenant id: <secret>
```

Provide the resource group ID and valid metrics name in the targets section of the file.

The final content of file will look as follows:

```
---
active_directory_authority_url: "https://login.
microsoftonline.com/"
resource_manager_url: "https://management.azure.com/"
credentials:
   subscription_id: "xxxxxx"
   client_id: "xxxxxx"
   client_secret: "xxxxxx"
   tenant_id: "xxxxxx"
```

targets:

- resource: "/resourcegroups/PrometheusRG/providers/Microsoft. ContainerService/managedClusters/prometheusclusterpoc" metrics:
  - name: "memoryRssBytes"
  - name: "cpuUsageNanoCores"
  - name: "cpuAllocatableNanoCores"
  - name: "memoryAllocatableBytes"
  - name: "cpuUsageNanoCores"
  - name: "memoryCapacityBytes"

resource\_groups:

- resource\_group: "PrometheusRG"

resource\_types:

- "Microsoft.Compute/virtualMachines"
- resource\_name\_include\_re:
  - "aks-agentpool-75077965-vmss000000"
- resource\_name\_exclude\_re:
  - "testvm12"

metrics:

- name: "memoryRssBytes"
- name: "cpuUsageNanoCores"

- name: "cpuAllocatableNanoCores"
- name: "memoryAllocatableBytes"
- name: "cpuUsageNanoCores"
- name: "memoryCapacityBytes"

**Step 20:** To generate the azure\_metrics\_exporter executable file, execute the following inline command under the same directory; e.g., /home/prometheus/azure\_metrics\_exporter:

\$ make build

**Step 21:** Create the Linux service for the azure\_metrics\_exporter executable. Create the azexporter.service file under the /etc/systemd/ system directory and copy the following inline commands, as shown in Figure 4-51:

```
[Unit]
Description=azure-exporter
Wants=network-online.target
After=network-online.target
[Service]
Type=simple
ExecStart=/usr/local/bin/azure_metrics_exporter \
        --config.file /home/prometheus/azure_metrics_exporter/
azure.yml
Restart=always
RestartSec=1
[Install]
WantedBy=multi-user.target
```

[root@devops0087 azure\_metrics\_exporter]# cd /etc/systemd/system [root@devops0087 system]# ll total 16 rw-r--r-- 1 root root 301 Dec 12 11:02 azexporter.service arwxr-xr-x. 2 root root 57 Feb 20 2019 Dasic.target.wants

Figure 4-51. Create Linux service for Azure exporter

Step 22: Start the service by executing the following command:

\$ systemctl start azexporter

Verify whether the azexporter service has started by executing the following command, as shown in Figure 4-52:

\$ systemctl status azexporter

# Figure 4-52. Verification of Azure exporter

**Step 23:** Copy the following content into the config-map.yaml file under the scrape configs: section:

```
- job_name: 'azure-monitoring'
    static_configs:
        - targets: ['10.1.150.126:9276']
```

Under targets, give the IP address of the master node (10.1.150.126) and Azure Monitor port, which is 9276.

**Step 24:** Execute the following command to reflect the changes in Prometheus:

```
$ kubectl delete configmaps prometheus-server-conf
-n=monitoring
$ kubectl create -f config-map-new.yaml
```

CHAPTER 4 CONTAINER INFRASTRUCTURE MONITORING

\$ kubectl delete deployment prometheus-deployment -n monitoring

```
$ kubectl apply -f prometheus-deployment.yaml -n monitoring
```

**Step 25:** Open the Prometheus GUI to get the status of the Azure exporter, as shown in Figure 4-53.

Targets					
All Unhealthy					
azure-monitoring (1/1 up)	l				
azure-monitoring (1/1 up) stow less	State	Labels	Last Scrape	Scrape Duration	Error

Figure 4-53. Verification of Azure exporter on Prometheus console

**Step 26:** Click on Graph tab and execute the following query to get the result (after configuring the exporter, please wait for at least twenty to thirty minutes to get the result), as shown in Figure 4-54.

kube\_node\_status\_allocatable\_cpu\_cores\_count\_min

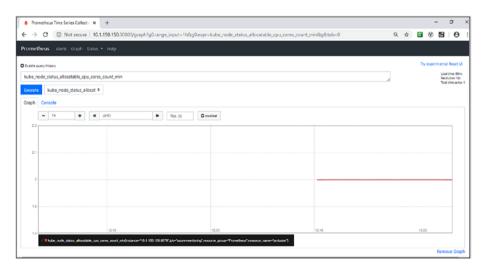


Figure 4-54. Node status graph using Azure exporter

**Step 27:** Click on the Graph tab and execute the following query to get the total amount of available memory in a managed cluster, as shown in Figure 4-55.

kube\_node\_status\_allocatable\_memory\_bytes\_bytes\_average

Pron	netheus Time Series Collectic 🗙 🕂					-	c	3
)	C A Not secure 10.1.150.150.300	00/graph?g0.range_input=1h8zg0.expr=kube_nod	e_status_allocatable_memory_bytes_	bytes_average&g0.tab=0 Q	<b>†</b>	۲	5	Θ
meth	<b>heus</b> Alerts Graph Status - Help							
able qu	vey kinary			22.0		y experim	vertai A	eact UI
be_no	de_status_allocatable_memory_bytes_bytes_av	erage		*			Load Sim Resolution	an 144
ecute	- insert metric at cursor - •						Star be	e seres.
aph	Console							
	- 1h + 4 Unst	Res. (s)     O stacked						
5.20								1
60								
+00								
480								
4.40	12.50	12-43	12.00	13.15				
		verapet/milance="10.1.150.123.8270".job="acure-moniloring".resource_					-	5

Figure 4-55. Node allocated memory graph using Azure exporter

**Step 28:** Click on the Graph tab and execute the following query to get the total number of ready pods:

kube\_pod\_status\_ready\_count\_total

**Step 29:** Click on the Graph tab and execute the following query to get the maximum number of ready pods. See the result under the Console section of query.

```
kube_pod_status_ready_count_max
```

## **Kube Stat Metrics**

The Kube-state-metrics exporter leverages the Kubernetes APIs to provide metrics for various Kubernetes objects. Let's configure Kube-state and see how we can fetch metrics using Prometheus. You will get more metrics at the following link:

https://github.com/kubernetes/kube-state-metrics/tree/master/docs

**Step 1:** Navigate to the /home/prometheus directory and execute the following inline command:

\$ git clone https://github.com/kubernetes/kube-state-metrics.
git

**Step 2:** Verify whether the kube-state-metrics clone is successful by executing the following inline command, as shown in Figure 4-56:

#### \$ ls -ltr

UTWXT-XT-X	Z TOUL TOUL	24 DEC 24 17:15 KUDESLALE
drwxr-xr-x	13 root root	4096 Dec 24 17:55 kube-state-metrics
	1 1001 1001	7745 Dar 24 IS IN CONTINEMENTAL WAR

Figure 4-56. Kube-state-metrics clone from Git

**Step 3:** Navigate to /home/prometheus/kube-state-metrics and execute the following command to install the kube-state exporter:

```
$ cd /home/prometheus/kube-state-metrics
```

```
$ kubectl apply -f examples/standard
```

**Step 4:** Execute the following command to get the kube-state service details, as shown in Figure 4-57:

\$ kubectl get svc -n kube-system

[root@devops0087 p	prometheus]# ku	bectl get svc	-n kube-system		
NAME	1 TYPE	CLUSTER-IP	EXTERNAL-IP	PORT(S)	AGE
kube-dns	ClusterTP	10.96.0.10	<none></none>	53/UDP.53/TCP.9153/TCP	15d
kube-state-metrics	5 ClusterIP	None	<none></none>	8080/TCP,8081/TCP	39m
criter-deproy	Cluster1P_	10.106.148.3	<none></none>	44134/ ICP	140

Figure 4-57. Kube-state-metrics service status

**Step 5:** Execute the following command to fetch the kube-statemetrics endpoint that needs to be set in Prometheus, as shown in Figure 4-58:

\$kubectl describe svc kube-state-metrics -n kube-system

[root@devops0087 p Name:	rometheus]# kubectl describe svc kube-state-metrics -n kube-system kube-state-metrics
Namespace:	kube-system
Labels:	app.kubernetes.io/name=kube-state-metrics app.kubernetes.io/version=v1.9.0
Annotations:	<pre>kubectl.kubernetes.io/last-applied-configuration:</pre>
bernetes.i	
Selector:	app.kubernetes.io/name=kube-state-metrics
Type:	ClusterIP
IP:	None
Port:	http-metrics 8080/TCP
Endpoints:	10.32.0.2:8080
TargetPort: Endpoints: Session Affinity: Events:	telemetry 0001/TCP telemetry/TCP 10.32.0.2:8081 None <none></none>
[root@devops0087 p	rometneus]#

Figure 4-58. Kube-state-metrics service endpoint details

Copy the Endpoints value 10.32.0.2:8080, then update the configmap.yaml file and copy the following lines under the scrape\_configs: section:

- job\_name: 'kube-state-metrics'
  static\_configs:
- targets: ['10.32.0.2:8080']

**Step 6:** Execute the following command to reflect the changes in Prometheus:

\$kubectl delete configmaps prometheus-server-conf -n=monitoring

```
$kubectl create -f config-map.yaml
$kubectl delete deployment prometheus-deployment -n monitoring
$kubectl apply -f prometheus-deployment.yaml -n monitoring
```

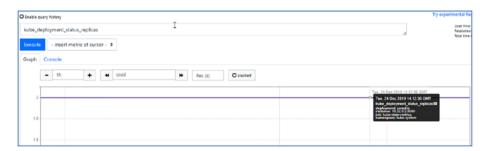
**Step 7:** Log in to the Prometheus GUI (http://master\_ip:30000) ➤ Targets to verify whether kube-state-metrics is up and running, as shown in Figure 4-59.

includy for in the Meenway province in the	<u>vi</u>			10.00000	
kube-state-metrics (1/1 up) snow less					
				Scrape	
Endpoint	State	Labels	Last Scrape	Duration	Error
http://10.32.0.2:8080/metrics	UP	instance="10.32.0.2:8080" job="kube-state-metrics"	4.318s ago	14.53ms	

*Figure 4-59. Kube-state-metrics service verification on Prometheus console* 

**Step 8:** Navigate to the Graph tab to execute the following query to analyze the Kubernetes deployment status to get the desired state of replicas. This helps in identifying the deployments that are having issues or facing errors, as shown in Figure 4-60.

kube\_deployment\_status\_replicas



*Figure 4-60. Kube deployment status metrics graph using Kube-state-metrics* 

## Summary

In this chapter, we provided hands-on steps for setting up Helm and Tiller. We also provided information on various exporters' setup and their uses in Prometheus. We also guided readers in deploying exporters and viewing metrics for their containerized application. In the next chapter, we will start with an overview of Prometheus Query Language.

## **CHAPTER 5**

## Working with Prometheus Query Language (PromQL)

PromQL (Prometheus Query Language) is a functional query language provided by Prometheus to enable the user to query data stored in real time and perform all sorts of analysis, aggregations, and operations. In this chapter, we will provide hands-on steps to the readers that will enable them to use PromQL.

Prior to getting started with PromQL, let's briefly understand the way data is stored in Prometheus.

## Data in Prometheus

As we know by now, Prometheus monitors metrics and collects and stores time-series data.

Time-series data is defined as a series of data points ordered by time. Let's understand time-series data with an example. If we enable perminute monitoring of the CPU in an environment comprising different types of Cis, such as servers, devices, networks, etc., then at every minute

a data point will be generated that depicts the CPU utilization at that point in time. If we represented the data collected as a table, the values collected would look like Table 5-1.

Timestamp	CPU Utilization (%)
1591709873808	67
1591709884270	66
1591709891811	67
1591709898278	68
1591709905225	67

Table 5-1. CPU Utilization example

In Prometheus, a time-series object is created for each metric monitored, in order to store the metric's data. The object is uniquely identified by the metric's name and primarily comprises a key-value pair, where the key is a millisecond-precision timestamp and the value is the measured data in Float format. Each key-value pair is termed as Sample; i.e., data at a given timestamp.

So, in Prometheus, the preceding data will become part of the timeseries object uniquely identified by its metric name; i.e., cpu\_util\_perc. The hypothetical representation of the preceding data looks as follows:

```
cpu_util_perc:
(1591709873808, 67),
(1591709884270, 66),
(1591709891811, 67),
(1591709898278, 68),
(1591709905225, 67)
```

Though the preceding data provides information about the CPU utilization (%) against a timestamp, it doesn't provide any information related to which CI's data it is.

To cater to this, Prometheus enables us to define *labels*. Labels enable us to capture additional attributes of the data monitored. In the object, this is further stored as a key-value pair, where the key is the name of the attribute being captured and the value is the actual attribute data.

In the preceding example of object cpu\_util\_perc we can create a label named CI to capture details of the CI whose CPU utilization is being monitored.

With the labels in place, the samples—i.e., the time-series data—will be hypothetically represented as shown here:

```
cpu_util_perc {ci: "ci_1"}:
(1591709873808, 67),
(1591709884270, 66),
(1591709891811, 67),
(1591709898278, 68),
(1591709905225, 67)
cpu_util_perc {ci: "ci_2"}:
(1591709873808, 67),
(1591709891811, 67),
(1591709898278, 68),
(1591709905225, 67)
```

. . . . . .

Multiple labels can be defined per metric to capture various information about the data being measured.

## **Getting Started**

Now that we know the way data is stored in a Prometheus time-series database, let's begin querying the data.

We begin with selectors—different ways in which we can select data, aggregators, and functions. Finally, we will see the ways in which we can use operators (arithmetic and Boolean) to work with the result data.

## **Selectors**

There are various options for selecting the data. In PromQL terminology, we will look at various selectors of the metrics data.

Please note for all the examples here we will refer to the data of metric jvm\_memory\_bytes\_used. This metric stores the JVM memory area-wise bytes used by different jobs running across various instances.

## **Select Metric**

We begin with simply typing the metric name into the query console, as follows:

```
jvm_memory_bytes_used
```

As mentioned earlier, all data related to the metric is stored in a timeseries object identified by the metric name and its distinct labels. So, simply typing the metric name in the query console selects and displays data for all its distinct labels, as shown in Figure 5-1.

Enable query history	Try experimental React UI
jvm_memony_bytes_used	Load time 270ms Resolution: 14s Total time series: 1
Execute + insert metric at cursor + +	
Graph Console	
★ 2020-05-09 C000000	
Element	Value
jum_memory_bytes_used/area="heap".exported_instance="10.1.150.12.8030".exported_job="jira".instance="10.1.150.150.30000".job="federate")	400524160
wm_memory_bytes_used[area="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.150.30000",exported_job="federate";instance="10.1.150.150.30000",job="federate")	608169696
jvm_memory_bytes_used(area ="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.45085",exported_job="jenkins",instance="10.1.150.35030000".job="federate")	603189696
jvm_memory_bytes_used(area = "heap",instance="10.1.150.128080",job="jira")	400524160
jvm_memory_bytes_used(area="heap";instance="10.1.150.4:8085";job="jenkins")	603189696
jum_memory_bytes_used(area="nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.128080",exported_iob="jira",instance="10.1.150.150:30000",job="federate")	487757048
jum_memory_bytes_used/area = "nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.150:30000",exported_iob="federate",instance="10.1.150.150:30000",iob="federate"}	383415312
jvm_memory_bytes_used/area="nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.48085",exported_job="jenkins",instance="10.1.150.150;80000".job="federate")	383415312
	487757048
jvm_memory_bytes_used(area="nonheap")instance="10.1.150.12.8080".job="jira")	

#### Figure 5-1. Displaying data

The data returned is a single sample value for all distinct labels timestamped at the same timestamp, which is probably the last timestamped value captured. This output is termed as an *instant* vector in PromQL.

## **Filter by Labels**

As can be seen in the preceding output, the labels associated with the metric are area, job, instance, and so on. Let's next look at selectors with filters on labels.

Let's add a filter on the label "area" to select data where the value is heap. For this, we will simply mention the required label in the query, as shown here:

```
jvm_memory_bytes_used {area="heap"}
```

This returns data points where the label "area" has a value of heap, as shown in Figure 5-2.

5 Enable query history	Try experimental React UI
jvm_memory_bytes_used (area=theap")	Load time: 245m Resolution: 14s
Execute - Insert metric at cursor - •	Total time series
Graph Console	
Benent	Value
jvm_memory_bytes_used/area="heap".exported_instance="10.1.150.12.0000".exported_job="jira"jinstance="10.1.150.150.00000".job="federate")	400524160
jvm_memory_bytes_used[area = 'heap ',exported_instance = '10.1.150.150.30000',exported_job = 'federate',instance = '10.1.150.150.30000',job = 'tederate']	608139695
jvm_memory_bytes_usedjarea="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.4:8085",exported_job="jenkins",instance="10.1.150.150:30000",job="federate"}	608189696
jvm_memory_bytes_used(area="heap"/instance="10.1.150.12:8080"/job="jra")	400524160
jvm_memory_bytes_usecijarea="heap",instance="10.1.150.4.8085",job="jerkins")	608189696

Figure 5-2. Return values as heap

In the preceding query we used the = operator to return matching data. Next, let's use the following query to display all data except the ones where "area" equals heap.

```
jvm_memory_bytes_used {area!="heap"}
```

Here, we have just replaced the = operator with the != operator. As we can see in Figure 5-3, the output instant vector comprises data where area! = "heap".

Enable query history	Try experimental React UI
vm_memory_bytes_used (areat="fileap")	Load time: 159m Resolution: 14s Total time series
Execute - insert metric at cursor - +	1015 time serves
Graph Console	
Element	Value
jvm_memory_bytes_used[zea="nonheap";exported_instance="10.1.150.12:8080";exported_job="jira";instance="10.1.150.150.30000";job="federate"]	487757048
jvm_memory_bytes_used[area="nonheap";exported_instance="10.1.150.150:30000";exported_job="federate";instance="10.1.150.150:30000";job="federate";	383415312
jvm_memory_bytes_used(area="nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.4.8085";exported_job="jenkins",instance="10.1.150.150.30000",job="federate";	383415312
jvm_memory_bytes_used[area = "nonheap";instance="10.1.150.12.8080";job="jisa"]	487757048
jvm_memory_bytes_usedjarea="nonheap",instance="10.1.150.4:8085",job="jerkins")	383415312
	Remove Grap

Figure 5-3. Return values that are not heap

The preceding were examples where we did exact matches of the values. Let's next look at regular expressions or searches where we will filter the data on the basis of a regular expression. The following query enables us to select all cases where the "job" label values begin with the characters fed.

```
jvm_memory_bytes_used {job=~"fed.+"}
```

As shown in the output in Figure 5-4, the instant vector-only data where the "Job" label values begin with fed are selected.

Enable query history		Try experimental React UI
jvm_memory_bytes_used (job=~"fed.+")		Load time: 140 Resolution: 14
Execute - insert metric at cursor - •		lots time series
Graph Console		
€ 2020-05-09 00:00:00 ₩		
Element		Value
ivm_memory_bytes_usediarea="heap".exported_instance="10.1.150.12:8080".exported_job="jira".instance="10.1.150.150:80000".job="federate")		400524160
<pre>im_memory_bytes_used(area ="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.150.30000",exported_job ="lederate",instance ="10.1.150.150.30000",job = "lederate")</pre>		608189696
ivm_memory_bytes_used[area="heap";exported_instance="10.1.150.4:8085";exported_job="jerkins";instance="10.1.150.150:30000";job="federate"]		608189696
im_memory_bytes_used(area="nonheap";exported_instance="10.1.150.12:8080";exported_job="jira";instance="10.1.150.150:80000";job="lederate")		487757048
		383415312
<pre>imm_memory_bytes_usediarea="nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.150.30000",exported_job="federate",instance="10.1.150.150.30000",job="federate")</pre>		

Figure 5-4. The results of our query

We can also filter the data by using a regular expression where we will fetch data *not* matching an expression. The following query fetches all data except those where the "Job" label value begins with fed:

```
jvm_memory_bytes_used {job!~"fed.+"}
```

Figure 5-5 depicts the instant vector returned.

Enable query history	Try experimental React U
ivm_memory_bytes_used (job!~"ted.+")	Load time: 161m Resolution: 145 Total time series
Execute - insert metric at cursor - •	
Graph Console	
★ 2020-06-09 00:00:00	
Bement	Value
vm_memory_bytes_used(area="heap",instance="10.1.150.12:8080",job="jira")	400524160
(vm_memory_bytes_used(area="heap",instance="10.1.150/4:8085",job="jenkins")	608189695
vm_memory_bytes_used(area="nonheap")instance="10.1.150.128080".job="jira")	487757048
ivm_memory_bytes_used(area="nonheap",instance="10.1.150.4.8085".job="jenkins")	383415312

Figure 5-5. The instant vector

Next, let's use the or operator denoted by symbol "|", which enables us to do either/or with the values.

The following query enables us to select data where the "Job" label values begin with either f or j.

```
jvm_memory_bytes_used {job=~"f.+|j.+"}
```

Figure 5-6 shows the data fetched. The | operator enables us to specify multiple values where either of the value matches satisfies the condition.

Enable query history		fry experimental React UI
jvm_memory_bytes_used [job=~"f.+[j.+"}	4	Load time: 240ms Resolution: 14s
Execute - insert metric at cursor - +		Total time periect
Graph Console		
₭ 2020-06-09 000000		
Bemont		Value
vm_memory_bytes_used(area="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.12.8080",exported_job="jira",instance="10.1.150.150:80000" job="federate")		400524160
vm_memory_bytes_used(area="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.150.30000",exported_job="federate",instance="10.1.150.150:30000",job="federate"}		608189596
ym_memory_bytes_used(area="heap".exported_instance="10.1.150.48085",exported_iob="jenkins".instance="10.1.150.150.30000".job="iederate")		608189596
vm_memory_bytes_used(area="heap"instance="10.1.150.12.8080"job="jira")		400524160
vm_memory_bytes_used(area="heap")instance="10.1.150.48085" job="jenkins")		608189596
vm_memory_bytes_usedIarea="nonheap".exported_instance="10.1.150.12.8080",exported_job="jira"instance="10.1.150.150.30000" job="federate")		487757048
vm_memory_bytes_used(area="nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.30000",exported_job="federate",instance="10.1.150.30000",job="federate")		303415312
vm_memory_bytes_used(area = "nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.4:8085",exported_job="jenkins",instance="10.1.150.150.30000",job="federate")		383415312
vm_memory_bytes_used(area="nonheap")instance="10.1.150.128080",jcb=")ira"}		487757048
ven, memory, bytes, used[srea="nonheap"]instance="10.1.150.4/s065".job="jenisins")		382415312

Figure 5-6. The fetched jobs

If we have exact values, we can use the values separated by the | operator to select rows with either value, as shown in the following query, where we fetch data where the "area" label value is either heap or nonheap.

jvm\_memory\_bytes\_used {area=~"heap|nonheap"}

Figure 5-7 shows the vector returned.

Enable query history	Try experimental React U
jvm_memory_bytes_used (area=~"heap[nonheap")	Load time: 156m Resolution: 14s
Execute - Insert metric at cursor - •	Total time series:
Graph Console	
★ 2020-06-09 00:0000 →	
Element	Value
<pre>km_memory_bytes_used(area="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.12:8080",exported_job="jira",instance="10.1.150.150:30000".job="federate";</pre>	400524160
wm_memory_bytes_used(area+"heap",exported_instance+"10.1.150.150.30000",exported_job+"federate",instance+"10.1.150.150.30000".job+"federate")	608189596
hm_memory_bytes_used[area="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.4:8085",exported_job="jenkins",instance="10.1.150.150:30000",job="federate";	608189596
km_memory_bytes_used(area="hesp".jnstance="10.1.150.128080".jcb="jira")	400524160
km_memory_bytes_used(area="heap".jnstance="10.1.150.4:8085".job="jenkins")	608189696
ixm_memory_bytes_used(area="nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.12:8080",exported_job="jira",instance="10.1.150.150:30000",job="federate")	487757048
ivm_memory_bytes_used(area="nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.150.30000",exported_job="federate",instance="10.1.150.150.30000",job="federate")	383415312
wm_memory_bytes_used(area="nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.4.8085",exported_job="jenkins",instance="10.1.150.150.30000",job="federate")	383415312
wm_memory_bytes_used(area="nonheap",instance="10.1.150.12.8080",jcb="jira")	487757048
um_memory_bytes_used(area= 'nonheap',instance='10.1.150.4:8085'.job="jenkins"]	383415312

Figure 5-7. The vector returned

As can be seen, the data points were selected/fetched where the "area" value is either heap or nonheap.

## **Filter by Multiple Labels**

Let's next look at the way we can use multiple labels to filter the data. The multiple filters are by default combined with an AND operator, which implies that the data returns matches where all the filter criteria are specified. Whatever operators and criteria we discussed previously can be individually applied to each filter condition, and then we can combine them.

Let's look at the following query:

jvm\_memory\_bytes\_used {instance=~"10.1.150.12:8080", area!~"heap", job=~'j.+'}

The query returns data where "instance" is 10.1.150.12:8080, "area" is not heap, and "job" values start with j, as shown in Figure 5-8.



#### Figure 5-8. Further filtering of the results

Prometheus does not support OR between the filters. However, we can work around the requirement by using whatever selectors we have learned up until now.

For example, if we want to select data that matches the following criteria—"job" starts with J and "area" = heap or "area" = nonheap—we can use the following query:

```
jvm_memory_bytes_used {area=~"heap|nonheap", job=~'j.+'}
```

We will look at a few more examples toward the end of the section, where we will be talking about aggregation operations on the datasets.

## **Select to Return Range Vectors**

The preceding query returned an instant vector, which we know returns a single sample value for each distinct labeled time series.

In addition, PromQL enables us to select a range of samples (timestamped data) for each distinct labeled time series from the current instant. We simply have to specify the range duration, as shown here in square brackets next to the selectors:

```
jvm_memory_bytes_used [1m]
```

It comprises the duration we want to look back at followed by one of the following units:

- s: seconds
- m: minutes
- h: hours
- d: days
- w: weeks
- y: years

In the preceding example query, we have specified to select data of the last one minute from the current instant. As shown in Figure 5-9, the range of all samples collected in the last one minute for each distinct labeled entry is selected.

Prometheus Alerts Graph Status * Help		
C Enable query history	Try experimental React UI	
jvm_memory_bytes_used [1m]	Lead time: 455ms Republics: 14s Total time series: 10	
Execute jvm_memory_bytes_used •		
Graph Console		
K Moment		
Element	Value	
jum_memory_bytes_used(area="heap";instance="10.1.150.128089"job="jira")	40143948 (91501787771752) 40252706 (9150178771752) 43550706 (91501787701752) 43650706 (9150178701752) 4566057284 (91501787011752) 4400287284 (91501787011752)	
jum_memory_bytes_used(area="nonheas";intance="10.1.150.128000";iob="jira")	4.2056646 0150170777.75 4.2756646 0150170777.75 4.2756646 0150170770.75 4.2756646 0150170701.75 4.2756648 0150170701.75 4.2756648 0150170721.75	
jum_memory_byter_used(area="heap";instance="10.1.150.#2085";joba";jenkins")	636647200 @1591787772.015 608647200 @1591787782.015 608647200 @1591787782.015 636647200 @159178782.015	

#### Figure 5-9. The range of samples

This data output is termed as a *range vector* in PromQL, as it returns a range of values per distinct labeled time-series object for the duration selected.

**Note** The range vector cannot be directly graphed, but can be viewed in the console, as shown in Figure 5-9.

If square brackets do not specify the range, the default instant vector is returned, which is an instant single data sample for all distinct labeled time series objects.

The range operator can be combined with the other selection criteria we discussed previously.

In the following query, we return a range vector for data filtered by applying multiple filter criteria on different labels:

```
jvm_memory_bytes_used{area="heap", instance="10.1.150.150:30000",
job="federate",exported_job="federate"}[1m]
```

As shown in Figure 5-10, the output returns a range of data collected in the last one minute only for "instance" = 10.1.150.150:30000, "job" = federate, "exported\_job" = federate, and "area" = heap.

š Enable quary history	Try experimental React U
jvm_memory_bytes_used(area="heap", instance="10.1.150.150:30000",job="federate",exported_job="federate",[1m]	Load time: 273 Resolution: 148 Total time serie
Console - insert metric at cursor - •	
4 Moment	
Element	Value
rm_themory_bytes_used_usea ="heap"/exported_instance="10.1.150.150.000000"/exported_job="federate"/instance="10.1.130.150.00000"/ob="federate"/	470221160 @1597/18003.1%2 40003976 @1597/18003.015 470003440 @1597/18003.015 48003876 @1597/18003.015 47747440 @1597/18003.015 54592000 @1597/18003.015 54592000 @1597/18003.015 54592000 @1597/18003.015 37544352.@1597/18003.015 57544352.@1597/18003.015 54592000 @1597/18003.015 54592000 @1597/18003.015 54597/18003.015 54597/18003.015 54597/18003.015 54597/18003.015 54597/18003.015 54597/18003.015 54597/18003.015 54597/18003.015 54597/18003.015 54597/18003.015 54597/18003.015 54597/18003.015 54597/18003.015 54597/18003.015 54597/18003.

Figure 5-10. Another range of samples

So, in summary, to select a range vector we just need to append a range in square brackets at the end of the selector.

## **Select Past/Historical Data**

Till now, we have looked at selecting the current data or data specified at a moment. PromQL also enables us to select data from the past. For this, we simply use Offset in the query, as in the following, followed by the duration and the units, which we covered earlier in the range section.

#### jvm\_memory\_bytes\_used **Offset** 7d

As shown in Figure 5-11, the instant vector data returned is data that was collected seven days ago.

Enable query history	Try experimental React U
Wm_memory_bytes_used Offset 7d	Load tilve: 178m Resolution: 14s Total time series:
Execute - insert metric at cursor - •	
Graph Console	
Element	Value
ivm_memory_bytes_used(area="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.12:8080",exported_job="jira",instance="10.1.150.150:80000".job="federate")	441488328
j/m_memory_bytes_used(area="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.150:30000",exported_job="federate",instance="10.1.150.150:30000",job="federate";	522239544
jvm_memory_bytes_used[area="heap";exported_instance="10.1.150.48085";exported_job="jenkins",instance=110.1.150.150.30000".job="federate"]	522239544
jvm_memory_bytes_used(area='heap',instance='10.1.150.12:8080'jiob='jira')	441488328
jvm_memory_bytes_used(area='heap',instance='10.1.150.4.8085',job='jenkirs')	522239544
jum_memory_bytes_used[area="nonheap".exported_instance="10.1.150.12.8000".exported_job="jira"instance="10.1.150.150:30000".job="federate"}	407359000
ivm_memory_bytes_used[area="nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.150.30000",exported_job="federate",instance="10.1.150.150.30000",job="federate")	383401975
wm_memony_bytes_used(area="nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.48085",exported_job="jenkins",instance="10.1.150.150.30000",job="federate")	383491976
)vm_memcry_bytes_used(area="nonhead",instance="10.1.150.12:8080",iob="jira")	487355800
iven.memory.bytes.usedfarea="nonhead".instance="10.1.150.4.8085".job="jerking"]	383401975

#### Figure 5-11. Our first historical data example

We can return range vectors as well for the past data. We simply add the range duration at the end of the selector, as shown in the following query. The query returns a range of all data collected in the last one minute seven days back.

```
jvm_memory_bytes_used[1m] Offset 7d
```

The output in Figure 5-12 shows the past timestamped range values.

Enable query history	Try experimental React U	
[vm_memory_bytes_used[1m] Offset 7d	Resolution: 14s	
Execute - insert metric at cursor - •		
Graph Console		
et 2020-05-09 00.0000 >>>		
Element	Value	
im_memory_bytes_used[area="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.12.8080",exported_job="jira",instance="10.1.150.150.30000",job="federate")	369004512 @1591055941.974 373487552 @1591055951.974	
	381690556 @1591055961.974	
	422163024 @1591055971.974	
	433580950 @1591055981.974 441488328 @1591055991.974	
jvm_memony_bytes_used[area="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.150.30000",exported_job="federate",instance="10.1.150.150.30000",job="federate")	369004512 @1591055941.974	
	522239544 @1591055942.237 373487552 @1591055951.974	
	522239544 @1591055952.237	
	381690556 @1591055961.974	
	522239544 @1591055962.237	
	422163024 @1591055971.974	

Figure 5-12. Timestamped range values

We can use the other selectors we discussed earlier and further combine offset to return historical data of the filtered lot. For example, the following query selects past range data only for instances starting with 10.1.150.150:

jvm\_memory\_bytes\_used {instance =~ "10.1.150.150.\*"}[1m] Offset 7d

The output in Figure 5-13 depicts the data returned.

Einable query history	Try experimental React UI	
hm_memory_bytes_used (instance == "10.1.150.150.")(1m) Offset 7d	Load time: 164ms Resolution: 145 Total time series: 0	
Execute - insert metric at cursor - •		
Graph Console		
€ 2020-06-09 00:00:00 >>		
Benent	Value	
jen_memory_bytes_used(area="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.12.8080",exported_job="jira",instance="10.1.150.150:30000".job="federate")	369004512 @1591055941.974	
	373487552 @1591055951.974	
	381690656 @1591055961.974	
	422163024 @1591055971.974	
	433580960 @ 1591055981.974	
	441488328 @1591055991.974	
jvm_memory_bytes_used(area="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.150.30000",exported_job="federate";instance="10.1.150.150.30000",job="federate";	369004512 @ 1591055941.974	
	522239544 @1591055942.237	
	373407552 @1591055951.974	
	522239544 @1591055952.237	
	381690656 @ 1591055951.974	
	522239544 @1591055962.237	
	422163024 @ 1591055971.974	
	522239544 @1591055972.237	
	433580960 @1591055981.974 522239544 @1591055982.237	

Figure 5-13. The data returned from our query

All the queries we just looked at enabled us to select the data from the Prometheus database using PromQL, and all are termed as part of the selector clause. We also looked at the different vectors returned; i.e., instant vector versus range vector.

## Aggregation Example

Now that we have the data selected, let's apply aggregations to it to aggregate the data for meaningful analysis. PromQL supports multiple aggregation operators. Please refer to the official site for more details.<sup>1</sup> In the following examples, we refer to these operations:

- sum: to sum the values
- topk/bottomk: to return top/bottom *K* data points ordered by values data

Let's begin with the usage of the sum operator. As shown in the following query, we simply add the sum operator to the metric name.

```
sum(jvm_memory_bytes_used)
```

The output, as shown in Figure 5-14, returns the total JVM memory bytes used.

S Enable query history		Try experimental React UI
SUM(jvm_memory_bytes_used) Execute insert metric at cursor -  Graph Console		Load three 12m Resolution to Total time series
◀ 2020-06-09 00:00:00		
Dement	Value	

Figure 5-14. Total memory bytes used

https://prometheus.io/docs/prometheus/latest/querying/operators/
#aggregation-operators

The preceding query gives overall consumption data. Let's next group the data by area using the by clause, as shown in the following query:

sum by (area) (jvm\_memory\_bytes\_used)

The output, as shown in Figure 5-15, returns area-wise total memory bytes used.

Enable query history		Try experimental React UI
sum by (area) (jvm_memory_bytes_used)		A Load time: 150ms Resolution: 14s Total time series: 2
Execute - insert metric at cursor - •		Ioui Line seres
Graph Console		
€ 2020-05-09 00:00:00 >>		
Element	Value	
(area = "heap")	2625617408	
(area = "nonheap")	2125760032	

Figure 5-15. Total memory bytes used per area

Let's further group the data by job to view consumed memory by job:

sum by (job) (jvm\_memory\_bytes\_used)

The output in Figure 5-16 shows job-wise memory consumed.

S Enable query history		Try experimental F	
sum by (job) (jvm_memory_bytes_used)		4	Load time: 150m Resolution: 14s Total time series
Execute - insert metric at cursor - +		Total ter	Total time series
Graph Console			
44         2020-06-09 00:00:00         >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>			
Element	Value		
(iob="federate")	2871491224		
(ob='jis')	888281208		
(iob="jenkins")	991605008		

Figure 5-16. Memory consumed per job

We have individually grouped the data by different labels. Let's next use the following query to group the data by area and job so as to view jobwise each area-wise memory byte consumed.

sum by (area, job) (jvm\_memory\_bytes\_used)

The output in Figure 5-17 shows the area-wise job-wise memoryconsumed details.

5 Enable query history	Try experimental React U
m by (area, job) (jvm_memory_bytes_used)	Load time: 145 Resolution: 145
Execute - insert metric at cursor - +	- Total line safe
Graph Console	
€ 2020-05-09 00:00:00 ►	
Element	Value
(area + "heap".job+"federate")	1616503552
(area="heap".job="jira")	400524160
(anea="heap".job="jenkins")	608189696
(area="nonheap".job="federate")	1254587672
(area="nonheap".job="jira")	487757048
(area = "nonheap" job="jenkins")	383415312

Figure 5-17. Memory used by area and job

Now that we have grouped the data, let's next find out the top two jobs and area that are consuming the most memory. We use the topk operator along with sum, as shown in the following query, to return the top two areas and jobs:

```
topk(2, sum by (area, job) (jvm_memory_bytes_used))
```

Figure 5-18 shows the top two identified labeled data.

Enable query history	Try experimental React
topk(2, sum by (area, job) (jvm_memory_bytes_used))	Load time: 14 Resolution: 14 Teals time series
Execute - insert metric at cursor - •	ieta tre se-
Graph Console	
←         2020-06-09 00:00:00         >>	
Bement	Value
[area="heap"job="federate")	1616903552
(area="nonheap".job="federate")	1254387672

#### Figure 5-18. The top two values

If we need to find the bottom area and jobs consuming the least memory, we can use bottomk along with sum to return the data, as shown in the following query:

bottomk(2, sum by (area, job) (jvm\_memory\_bytes\_used))

Figure 5-19 shows the bottom two identified labeled data.

Enable query history	Try experimental React
bottomk(2, sum by (area, job) (jvm_memory_bytes_used))           Execute         - insert metric at cursor - @	Look time 10 Resource and Resource and
Graph Console	
€ 2020-05-09 00:02:00 ₩	
Element	Value
(area="nonheap".job="jenkins")	383415312
(area="heap".job="jira")	400524160

#### Figure 5-19. The bottom two results

Until now, we have aggregated the instant vector, which actually aggregated the single latest timestamped value and did not take into consideration the range of data generated. Let's look at using the aggregation operators with the range vectors.

As we know, range vectors return a range of all data collected, so the vector cannot be directly used in the aggregation operators. We will first have to use the varied functions<sup>2</sup> offered by PromQL to fetch the most relevant data point from the range. Relevance depends on the characteristics of the data. In our examples, since we are looking at bytes consumed, we will be interested in looking at the average value in the range. To find the relevant data point from the range, we will use the avg over time function from the list.

Let's first look at the output of the function. We will use the following query to fetch all ranges of data generated in the last one min and then use the avg\_over\_time function on it.

```
avg_over_time(jvm_memory_bytes_used[1m])
```

As shown in Figure 5-20, the output returns the average value of each range.

Enable query history	Try experimental React UI
avg_over_time(jvm_memory_bytes_used(1m])	Load time: 251ms Resolution: 14s
Execute - insert metric at cursor - ●	Total time peries: 1
Graph Console	
◀ 2020-06-09 00 00 00 →	
Bernent	Value
(area+"heap",exported_instance+"10.1.150.128080",exported_job+"jira",instance+"10.1.150.150/30000".job+"federate"}	429932732
(area="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.150:30000",exported_job="federate",instance="10.1.150.150:30000",job="federate")	519061213.99999994
(area="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.4.8085",exported_job="jenkins",instance="10.1.150.150:30000",job="federate")	608189696
(area="heap";instance="10.1.150.12:8080";job="jira")	429932732
(area="heap".instance="10.1.150.4/8065".job="jenkins")	608189695
(area+"nonheap".exported_instance+"10.1.150.12.8060".exported_job+"jira".instance+"10.1.150.150.90000".job+"federate")	487757048
(area="nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.150:30000",exported_job="federate",instance="10.1.150.150:30000",job="federate")	435566180
[area="nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.4:8085",exported_job="jenkins",instance="10.1.150.150:30000",job="federate"]	383415312
(area="nonheap";irstance="10.1.150.12:8080";job="jira")	487757048

Figure 5-20. The average value of each range

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>https://prometheus.io/docs/prometheus/latest/querying/functions/

As we can see, the Value field has single value for each distinct labeled data point and has been converted to an instant vector. The aggregation operator can now be used with the data, as we have done previously.

Let's continue with the preceding query. Let's expand the range selection to return all data in the last five minutes, average it per range, and then further use the AVG aggregation operator to find the average value of memory consumed grouped by area and job. Then we use topK to return the top five areas and jobs with maximum memory used. Use the following query to get the desired result:

#### TOPK(5, AVG by (area, job) (avg\_over\_time(jvm\_memory\_bytes\_ used[5m])))

The output in Figure 5-21 shows the top five areas and jobs.

Enable query history		Try experimental React UI
TOPK(5, AVG by (area, job) (avg_over_time@vm_memory_bytes_used[5m])))		Load time: 155m Resolution: 14s Total time series:
Execute - insert metric at cursor - +		lotal time series
Graph Console		
◀ 2020-05-09 00:00:00		
Element	Value	
(area="heap".job="jenkins")	531875643.46666667	
(area="nonheap".job="jira")	467757048	
(area="heap".job="federate")	478673164.6666667	
(area = "nonheap" (job="federate")	435585180	
	425470685.86666673	

Figure 5-21. Top five areas

We know by now the way we can select data and group by and apply aggregation operators to aggregate the data. We have also looked at using the aggregation operators on range data.

## **Logical and Arithmetic Operators**

With the data selected and aggregated, we can next look at operations that can be performed between the output data returned or on the metrics data. PromQL enables us to apply varied operators<sup>3</sup> on the result sets, allowing us to combine different datasets so as to compare and derive meaningful insights. In the examples in this section, we will use a few sample use cases.

**Use Case 1:** Let's begin with a use case wherein we compare current data with the historical data collected seven days back to identify any rise in memory consumed.

As shown in the following query, we use the comparison operator > between the two result sets to identify the labeled data where consumption is more than it was seven days before:

```
jvm_memory_bytes_used > 1 * (jvm_memory_bytes_used offset 7d)
```

As can be seen, we have simply used the operator between the previously fetched two vectors. We can use any selector criteria to select the data, and then can use the operators to do the needful; in this case we are comparing and identifying the ones where the consumption has increased. Figure 5-22 shows the output, listing only the ones where the consumption is high.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>https://prometheus.io/docs/prometheus/latest/querying/operators/

\$ Bnable query history	Try e	Try experimental React UI
nory_bytes_used > 1 * (jvm_memory_bytes_used offset 7d)	4	Load time: 154m Resolution: 14s
Execute - insert metric at cursor - =	eta	Total time serie
Graph Console		
ee 2020-06-09 00:00:00 >>		
Bement		Value
jvm_memory_bytes_used/area="heap".exported_instance="10.1.150.150.30000".exported_job="federate".instance="10.1.150.150.30000".job="federate")		608189695
		608189695
jvm_memory_bytes_used[area="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.4/s085",exported_job="jenkins",instance="10.1.150.150/30000".job="federate")		608189695
jmt,memory,bytes,useclarea="heap",opported,instance="10.1.150.48085",exported.job="jenions",instance="10.1.150.150.30000",job="federate") jmt,memory,bytes,useclarea="heap",instance="10.1.150.48085",job="jenkins"]		487757048
jvm_memory_bytes_usecijarea="heap",instance="10.1.150./s8085",job="jerkins")		487757048

#### Figure 5-22. High consumption

**Use Case 2:** As we know, the data returned by the metric jvm\_memory\_ bytes\_used is in bytes. In this use case, we will use a scalar arithmetic operation to convert the value to megabytes. The following query uses the multiplication operator to multiply the value by 0.000001 to convert it to megabytes:

```
jvm memory bytes used * 0.000001
```

The output returned is in megabytes, as shown in Figure 5-23.

Enable query history	Try experimental React UI
/vm_memory_bytes_used * 0.000001	Load time: 162ms Resolution: 14s
Stocuto     - Insert metric at cursor -      Graph     Console	Total time series:
4         2020-06-09 00:00:00         >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	
Bement	Value
area="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.12.6080",exported_job="jira"instance="10.1.150.150.30000",job="federate"j	400.52416
area = "heap",exported_instance= "10.1.150.150.30000",exported_job = "federate";instance= "10.1.150.150.30000",job = "federate";	608.189696
area="heap";exported_instance="10.1.150.48085";exported_job="jenkim";instance="10.1.150.150.30000";job="federate"]	608.189696
area="heap",instance="10.1.150.12.8080",job="jira"}	400.52416
area = "heap" jinstance = "10.1.150.4:0005" jcb = "jenkins")	608.189696
izrea = "nonhesp",exported_instance="10.1.150.12:8080",exported_job="jira",instance="10.1.150.150.30000",job="federate")	467.757048
	383,415312
area="nonhesp".exported_instance="10.1.150.150.30000",exported_job="federate",instance="10.1.150.150:30000",job="federate")	383.415312
areta "nonhog", oponted "instance = "10.1.150.130/30000", exported _iob = "tockete", instance = "10.1.150.130/30000", job = "tockete") areta = nonheap", exponted _instance = "10.1.150.43008", exported _iob = "feckite", instance = "10.1.150.130/30000", job = "feckite")	
	467.757048

Figure 5-23. Values in megabytes

**Use Case 3:** Let's now use two different metrics' data. In this use case, we will consider the jvm\_memory\_bytes\_usage metric along with jvm\_memory\_bytes\_committed. We will use the subtraction operator to identify the bytes remaining to consume, and further use scalar multiplication to convert the data into megabytes. The following query enables us to find the difference and returns the data in megabytes:

(jvm\_memory\_bytes\_committed - jvm\_memory\_bytes\_used) \* 0.000001

The output in Figure 5-24 shows per time-series object the data remaining in megabytes.

5 Enable query history	Try experimental React U
(jvm_memory_bytes_committed - jvm_memory_bytes_used) × 0.000001	Load time: 128m Resolution: 14s
Execute - insert metric at cursor - •	<ul> <li>Ibtal time series:</li> </ul>
Graph Console	
€ 2020-06-09 00:00:00	
Element	Value
(area="heap",exported_instance="10.1.150.12.8080",exported_job="jira",instance="10.1.150.150.30000",job="federate")	112.75379196999969
(area="heap".exported_instance="10.1.150.150.30000".exported_job="federate".instance="10.1.150.150.30000".job="federate")	88.589056
(area+"heap".exported_instance+"10.1.150.4.0005".exported_job+"jenkins".instance+"10.1.150.150:30000".job+"federate")	88.589056
(area*"heap";instance*"10.1.150.12:8080";job="jira")	112.75379190999999
(area="heap",instance="10.1.150.4:8085",job="jenkins")	88.589056
(area="nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.128080",exported_job="jira",instance="10.1.150.150.30000",job="federate")	39.365384
(area="nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.150:80000",exported_job="federate";instance="10.1.150.150:80000";job="federate";	64.502768
	64.502768
(area="nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.4:8085",exported_job="jenkins",instance="10.1.150.150:30000",job="federate")	
(areas"nonheap",exported_instance="10.1.150.48085",exported_jobs")enkins",instances"10.1.150.150.30000",jobs"federate") (areas"nonheap",instance="10.1.150.12:8000",job="jira")	39.365384

Figure 5-24. Data remaining in megabytes

**Use Case 4:** Next, let's apply an aggregation operator to the output of Use Case 3 to return area- and job-wise bytes remaining. Use the following query; we also use the scalar multiplier on the final output to convert it to megabytes:

```
sum by (area,job) (jvm_memory_bytes_committed - jvm_memory_
bytes_used) * 0.000001
```

Figure 5-25 shows the area- and job-wise remaining memory in megabytes.

Enable query history		Try experimental React UI
sum by (area.job) ( jvm_memory_bytes_committed - jvm_memory_bytes_used) * 0.000001		Load time: 345ms Resolution: 14s
Execute • insert metric at cursor • • Graph Console		 Total time series: 6
4 2020-06-09 00:00:00 B		
Element	Value	
(area="heap".job="federate")	269.931904	
(area="heap".job="jira")	112.75379199999999	
(area = "heap" (ob = ")enkins")	88.589055	
(area = "nonheap", job= "federate")	168.37091999999998	
(area = "nonheap" job="jira")	39.365384	
(area="nonheap".job="jenkins")	64.502768	

Figure 5-25. Remaining megabytes, by area and job

We can also apply topk to return the top two with maximum bytes remaining, as in the following query:

TOPK(2, sum by (job) (jvm\_memory\_bytes\_committed - jvm\_memory\_ bytes\_used) )\* 0.000001

The output in Figure 5-26 shows the top two jobs.

& Brake overy history TOPK(2, sum by (job) ( jvm_memory_bytes_committed - jvm_memory_bytes_used) )* 0.000001			Try experimental React UI
		A	Load time: 130m Resolution: 14s Total time series
Execute - insert metric at cursor - •			and the seles
Graph Console			
4         2020-06-09 00:00:00         >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>			
Bennent	Value		
	458.302824		
(job="federate")	********		

Figure 5-26. Top two jobs

**Use Case 5:** As we mentioned in the selector section, the filters when combined are joined by an AND operator. We looked at the way the | operator can be used to apply OR on values on the same label, so, prior to concluding, let's look at the way we can apply OR between filters on different labels. Let's say we want to select the values where either the label "job" or the "exported\_job" label has the Jira value. We will use the following query to select the data where job="jira" or exported\_job="jira".

```
(jvm_memory_bytes_used {job="jira"}) or (jvm_memory_bytes_used
{exported_job="jira"})
```

Here, we have simply used the OR operator between the two outputs, and it returns the expected output. The output returns rows where either the "job" value is jira or the "exported\_job" value is jira, as shown in Figure 5-27.

Enable query history	Try experimental React UI
(nm_memory_bytes_used (job="jira")) or (nm_memory_bytes_used (exported_job="jira"))	Load time: 242ms Resolution: 14s Total time series: 4
Execute - insert metric at cursor - •	
Graph Console	
← Moment →	
Dement	Value
vm_memory_bytes_used(area="heap",instance="10.1.150.12.0000",job="jira")	521756144
ixm_memory_bytes_used(area="nonheap")instance="10.1.150.128080")ob=")ira")	487881960
ivm_memory_bytes_used(area="heap".exported_instance="10.1.150.12:8080".exported_job="jira".instance="10.1.150.150:30000".job="federate")	492463120
wm_memory_bytes_used(area="nonheap".exported_instance="10.1.150.12.8080".exported_iob="jira".instance="10.1.150.150.30000".job="federate")	487881960

Figure 5-27. The output of the final query

With this, we have covered all important aspects of working with PromQL.

## Summary

In this chapter, we have provided hands-on steps for using Prometheus Query Language (PromQL). In the next chapter, we will start with understanding the dashboard and reporting solutions by using Grafana as Prometheus; Grafana is a common combination of monitoring dashboard.

## **CHAPTER 6**

# Container Reporting & Dashboards

This chapter will provide hands-on steps for using container reporting and dashboard solutions. Grafana and Prometheus are commonly used by DevOps teams for storing and visualizing time-series data. Grafana supports querying Prometheus and being a data source for Prometheus. We will look at the following:

- Introduction to Container Reporting and Dashboards
- Working with Grafana

## Introduction to Container Reporting and Dashboards

As we have seen so far, containers have become an integral part of modern application architectures, and as a result have changed the way software is deployed and operated. Once we have set up monitoring for the containers and applications, the next step from an operations visibility perspective is the dashboard and reporting. The dashboard and reporting solution will provide a graphical interface with which to visualize the container inventory, container metrics for availability and performance, and application metrics.

#### CHAPTER 6 CONTAINER REPORTING & DASHBOARDS

Dashboards also provide insight about the overall health of the container platform. From a security perspective, by leveraging container security and compliance solution integration, an operations team can also monitor the security posture of the container platform and any applications running on it.

There are various popular dashboard solutions available in the market for container dashboards and reporting. Let's look at a few of them.

**Grafana**: Grafana is a UI-based dashboard and reporting tool. It is used for data analysis and visualization that's generated by the various data sources in the form of metrics. Grafana has in-built support for timeseries databases such as Prometheus and InfluxDB, and it also supports rational databases, such as MySQL, SQL Server, etc. Grafana also allows one to create alerts on a specific condition or set of conditions; e.g., CPU utilization more than 80 percent, or disk usage, etc.

Grafana is available as both an open source version and an enterprise version. In this chapter, we will use open source Grafana to demonstrate how to create the dashboard for a container monitoring ecosystem.

**Sysdig:** Sysdig is a container monitoring and security tool that also provides dashboard and reporting capabilities. Sysdig provides customized dashboard creation so as to display the most useful/relevant views and metrics for the infrastructure in a single location. Each dashboard comprises a series of panels configured to display specific data in a number of different formats.

**Splunk:** Splunk is a unified solution with which to analyze, search, and visualize the data gathered from the various applications, sensors , servers, and containers. Splunk does not need any databases to store the data, as it extensively makes use of its indexes to do so. In Splunk, one can analyze container ecosystem performance, do troubleshooting, and store/retrieve data for later use.

In the next section, we will focus on Grafana's features for container reporting and dashboards. We will do a hands-on exercise to set up Grafana and fetch reports leveraging metrics from Prometheus.

## Grafana

Grafana uses the data source to connect with the system—e.g., Prometheus, MySQL, etc.—for collecting the data. Grafana has inbuilt support for time-series-based data sources like Prometheus or InfluxDB. Each data source has a specific query editor associated with it for executing the query to fetch the data; e.g., PromQL query editor for Prometheus. Grafana also supports mixed data sources, meaning the user can use multiple data sources in a single dashboard; e.g., user can map data from Elasticsearch along with data from Prometheus. Mixing different data sources can be done with custom data sources as well.

The following data sources are officially supported:

- CloudWatch
- Elasticsearch
- Graphite
- InfluxDB
- OpenTSDB
- Prometheus

## Panel

In Grafana visualizations known as panels, users can create a dashboard containing panels for various data sources. Each panel is associated with the query editor to extract the metrics and display the result. Panels can be rearranged and resized on the dashboard.

The following are the available panel types:

- Alert list
- Dashboard list
- Graph

- Heatmap
- Logs
- Singlestat
- Table
- Text

# **Query Editor**

The query editor allows the user to query the metrics. Each data source is associated with a different query editor that is used for creating the query; e.g., PromQL query editor is used to create any PromQL-based queries.

# Dashboard

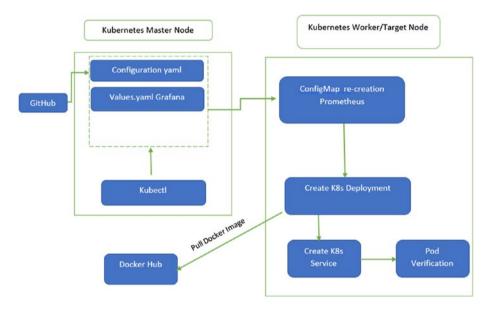
Grafana provides various types of pre-built dashboards—e.g., Prometheus, Kubernetes overview, etc.—to measure the data.<sup>1</sup> The user can also create customized dashboards based on various panels. Grafana supports templating to create a dynamic dashboard, and the user can share these dashboards among teams by publishing it.

**Explore:** Grafana Explore helps to analyze the metrics and logs to identify the cause of failure of the monitoring system. Since Grafana 6.0, Loki, a new data source introduced by Grafana, integrates with Explore to allow users to analyze metrics and correlated logs side-by-side to debug what went wrong.

**Alerting:** Grafana has a built-in alerting engine that allows the user to trigger alerts on the basis of the conditions/rules that apply on the panels. Grafana supports the following tools for notifying the user of the alerts: Slack, PagerDuty, VictorOps, and OpsGenie.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Pre-built dashboard: https://grafana.com/grafana/dashboards

Now, let's start installing Grafana in the environment that we set up in earlier chapters. Figure 6-1 provides an overview of the task flows we will follow to deploy Grafana.



# Figure 6-1. Grafana deployment flow

The following is the flow for the Grafana deployment that we will follow in this chapter:

- We will use the already cloned configuration files from GitHub. Additionally, we will pull a file from GitHub to be used for Grafana installation.
- We will recreate the config map and deploy Grafana as a pod.
- Finally, we will test the status of the Grafana deployment using command line and web browser access.

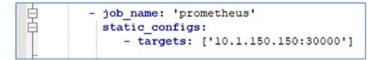
**Step 1:** Log in to the Kubernetes master node (10.1.150.126) and navigate to the /home/prometheus folder, and then append the following lines in config-map.yml in the scrape\_configs: section. Search for the section named job - job\_name: 'prometheus' under the scrape\_configs: section in the config-map.yaml file and append as shown in Figure 6-2.

**job\_name:** This section is the same as explained in previous chapters. In our example case, we are using job\_name as prometheus.

**static\_configs:** This section is the same as explained in previous chapters.

 targets: This section is the same as explained in previous chapters. In targets, we specify the IP and port of Prometheus itself; e.g., 10.1.150.126:30000.

This target will be used to set up the data source in Grafana to fetch the metrics generated by Prometheus itself.



# Figure 6-2. Config map file update

**Step 2:** Execute the following in-line commands to reflect the changes in Prometheus:

\$kubectl delete configmaps prometheus-server-conf -n=monitoring
\$kubectl create -f config-map.yaml
\$kubectl delete deployment prometheus-deployment -n monitoring
\$kubectl apply -f prometheus-deployment.yaml -n monitoring

**Step 3:** Verify that all the components of Prometheus are running fine, as shown in Figure 6-3:

#### \$ kubectl get all -n=monitoring

[root@k8s-master prometheus] NAME pod/alertmanager-564d4884bd- pod/prometheus-deployment-59	- mjjft	REA 1/1	Run		S AGE 20d 83m		
NAME service/alertmanager service/prometheus-service	TYPE NodePort NodePort	CLUSTER- 10.111.1 10.97.10	65.123	EXTERNAL-IP <none> <none></none></none>		000/TCP 000/TCP	AGE 20d 20d
NAME deployment.apps/alertmanage deployment.apps/prometheus-o		READY 1/1 1/1	UP-TO-DA 1 1	TE AVAILABLE 1 1	AGE 20d 83m		
NAME DESIRED CURRENT READY AGE replicaset.apps/alertmanager-564d4884bd 1 1 1 20d replicaset.apps/prometheus-deployment-59b58c4594 1 1 83m							

#### Figure 6-3. Verifying Prometheus pod status

**Step 4:** Open the Prometheus GUI (using the http://kubernetesmaster-node: 30000 URL) and navigate to targets to review the Prometheus endpoint, as shown in Figure 6-4.

prometheus (1/1 up) stowles					
Endpoint	State	Labels	Last Scrape	Scrape Duration	Error
http://10.1.150.126:30000/metrics	UP	instance="10.1.150.126:30000" job="prometheus"	1.663s ago	6.929ms	

Figure 6-4. Verifying Prometheus pod status

**Step 5:** Now, let's install the Grafana dashboard on the Kubernetes master node (10.1.150.126) by using Helm chart version 3.12.1 (GitHub URL: https://github.com/helm/charts/tree/master/stable/grafana)

Navigate to the /home/prometheus folder and execute the following command to clone the code from GitHub, as shown in Figure 6-5:

\$ git clone https://github.com/dryice-devops/grafana.git

drwxr-xr-x. 2 root root 25 Nov 20 15:10 grafana

# Figure 6-5. Cloning file from GitHub

**Step 6:** Navigate into the grafana folder by executing the following command:

# \$ cd grafana

**Step 7:** Open the values.yaml file and modify the following sections. Save the file before closing. Navigate to the section named service in values.yaml and add values to the following sections, as shown in Figure 6-6:

**service:** This section represents Kubernetes service configuration for Grafana.

**type:** This field provides information about the type of publishing services. Kubernetes service types allow you to specify what kind of service you want. The default is ClusterIP. In our example, we are using NodePort, which exposes the service on each node's IP at a static port (the NodePort).

**port:** Inside the cluster, what port does the service expose? E.g., 9000.

**targetPort:** This is the port at which the pod-based application will be listening on the network. We are using value 3000.

**nodePort:** This is the port on the node, e.g., master\_ node, on which the service will be available. We are using value 30007.

## Figure 6-6. Updating Value.yaml

**Step 8:** Navigate into the /home/prometheus folder and execute the following Helm command to install Grafana, as shown in Figures 6-7 and 6-8:

\$helm install -name Grafana-dashboard -f Grafana/values.yaml
stable/grafana --version 3.12.1

## Figure 6-7. Installation of Grafana



Figure 6-8. Installation of Grafana

Step 9: Execute the following command to get the secret password:

\$kubectl get secret --namespace default grafana-dashboard -o
jsonpath="{.data.admin-password}" | base64 --decode ; echo

You will get the password—e.g., dom3BiALxXmM1Q2hAPuPVIFozxW ID8yb7haMH6KU—which will be used to log in to the Grafana UI, as per Figure 6-9.

```
[rost0k8s-naster prometheus]# kubect] get secret --namespace default grafana-dashboard -o jsonpath="{.data.admin-password}" | base54 --decode ; echo
dom38iALxXmMuQ2hAPuPYIFozx#ID8yb7haMH6KU
```

# Figure 6-9. Grafana temporary password fetch

**Step 10:** Open the browser and enter the URL (http://master-nodeip:30007), e.g., http://10.1.150.126:30007, and enter the username as "admin" and password you got from step 9, as in Figure 6-10.



Figure 6-10. Grafana login page

# **Grafana Integration with Prometheus**

Now, let's configure the Prometheus end point in Grafana.

Step 1: After entering the credentials, navigate to Setting ➤ Data
Source as per Figure 6-11.

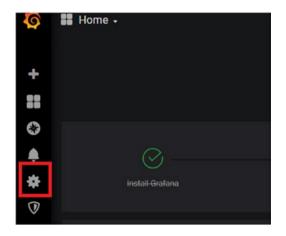


Figure 6-11. Grafana data source configuration

Step 2: Click "Add data source," as shown in Figure 6-12.



Figure 6-12. Grafana data source configuration

**Step 3:** Select Prometheus and enter the Prometheus URL http://10.1.150.126:30000/ under the HTTP URL section and hit the Save & Test button, as shown in Figure 6-13.

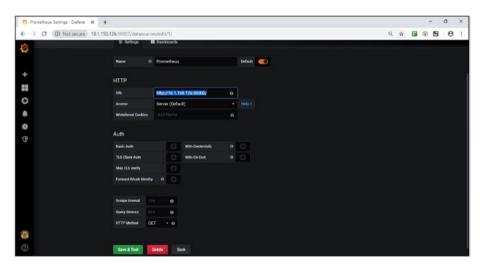


Figure 6-13. Grafana data source configuration

If the Prometheus end point has been configured successfully, you will get the message "Data source is working," as shown in Figure 6-14.



Figure 6-14. Grafana data source configuration validation

**Step 4:** Grafana provides one default dashboard. Click on Home to navigate to it, as shown in Figure 6-15.

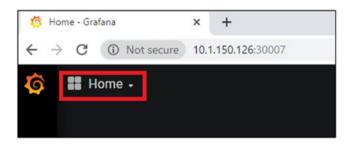


Figure 6-15. Grafana default dashboard navigation

Click Prometheus 2.0 Stats, as shown in Figure 6-16.



Figure 6-16. Grafana default dashboard navigation

You can now view the Prometheus dashboard, as shown in Figure 6-17.



Figure 6-17. Grafana default Prometheus dashboard navigation

# Summary

In this chapter, we have provided hands-on steps for using Grafana for container dashboard and reporting with Prometheus. In the next chapter, we will start with understanding how to leverage Dynatrace for container application monitoring, along with hands-on exercises.

# **CHAPTER 7**

# Container Application Monitoring Using Dynatrace

This chapter will provide hands-on steps for using Dynatrace for container application monitoring. We will look at the following:

- Introduction to Dynatrace
- Container Application Monitoring
- Working with Dynatrace for Container Application Monitoring

# **Introduction to Dynatrace**

Dynatrace is a software-intelligence monitoring platform that simplifies enterprise cloud complexity and accelerates digital transformation. Dynatrace seamlessly brings infrastructure and cloud, application performance, and digital experience monitoring into an all-in-one automated solution that's powered by artificial intelligence named Davis.

The following are the key capabilities of Dynatrace:

**Real User Monitoring:** Dynatrace helps the support and development teams trace an interaction end-to-end from real users, whether it is from a desktop-based browser or from a mobile device. It covers the availability and response time of an application as seen by the end user. It also provides for verification of UI elements and third-party content, and analysis of the service-side application down to the code level, so it is easy to troubleshoot and analyze any issues that the users may face.

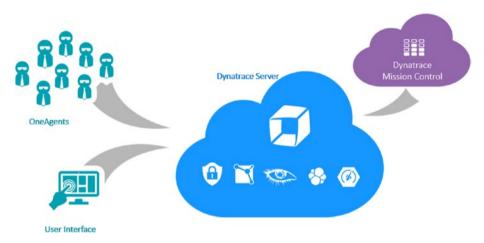
Server-side Service Monitoring: Web applications consist of web pages that are served by web servers which in turn interact with backend Application & Database servers depending upon incoming request type. Dynatrace OneAgent can provide details about which applications or services interact with which other services and which services or databases a specific service calls. We will cover this in detail using a hands-on lab exercise.

**Network, Process, & Host Monitoring:** Dynatrace enables monitoring of the entire infrastructure, including hosts, processes, and network.

**Container Monitoring:** Dynatrace seamlessly integrates with existing Docker environments and automatically monitors containerized applications and services. With Dynatrace, there is no need to modify Docker images, run commands, or create additional containers to enable Docker monitoring. Dynatrace has the ability to automatically detect the creation and termination of containers, and monitors the applications and services contained within those containers.

# **Architecture Overview**

Dynatrace can be deployed either as an SaaS solution or within an onpremises deployment. The on-premises version is called Dynatrace Managed, while the SaaS version is known as Dynatrace SaaS. In this chapter, we will cover Dynatrace SaaS' capabilities for container monitoring.



# Figure 7-1. Dynatrace SaaS architecture

Dynatrace SaaS has a simplified architecture (Figure 7-1). Its core component comprises OneAgent and ActiveGate. SaaS customers only need to install OneAgent to enable monitoring for the target environment.

ActiveGate works as a proxy between Dynatrace OneAgent and Dynatrace SaaS/Managed versions. It can be installed on Windows or Linux. If you use Dynatrace SaaS, you only need to install an environment ActiveGate. The main functions of ActiveGate include the following:

**Message routing:** ActiveGate knows about the runtime structure of the Dynatrace environment and routes messages from OneAgents to the correct server endpoints.

**Buffering and compression:** ActiveGate collects messages from OneAgent instances and builds bulks, which are then sent in compressed form to the Dynatrace server.

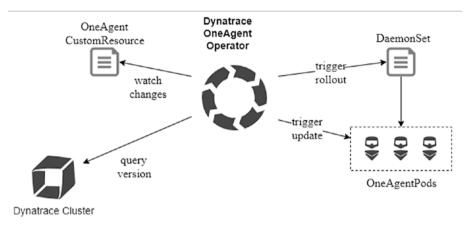
**Authentication:** ActiveGate authenticates OneAgent requests (SSL handshake and environment ID authentication).

**Entry point for sealed networks:** Dynatrace server clusters often run in protected environments that aren't directly accessible by OneAgent instances running outside of a sealed network. ActiveGate can be used to serve as a single access point for such OneAgent instances.

# **Container Monitoring Using Dynatrace**

Dynatrace OneAgent is container-aware and comes with built-in support for out-of-the-box monitoring of Kubernetes. Dynatrace supports full-stack monitoring for Kubernetes; i.e., monitoring from the application down to the infrastructure layer.

For container monitoring, the Dynatrace OneAgent operator registers itself as a controller that watches for resources of type OneAgent, as defined by a custom resource definition. This allows you to define a configuration that describes your OneAgent deployment. By loading the configuration into Kubernetes, the configuration is automatically passed to the custom controller. Figure 7-2 outlines the involved components and objects.



#### Figure 7-2. Dynatrace container monitoring architecture

By creating the OneAgent custom resource entity in Kubernetes, the object is automatically passed to the Dynatrace OneAgent operator. First, it determines if a corresponding DaemonSet already exists. If not, the Dynatrace OneAgent operator creates a new one. The DaemonSet is responsible for rolling out OneAgent to selected nodes. Dynatrace also automatically polls the pods to check for updated versions, and if the updated versions are not deployed then the latest version is automatically rolled out.

Now, let's begin with an exercise that uses Dynatrace for container monitoring. We will begin by requesting the evaluation version of Dynatrace SaaS.

**Step 1:** Navigate to the following URL to request a fifteen-day trial of Dynatrace SaaS. Click on the Free Trial button in the corner.

#### https://www.dynatrace.com

Step 2: Enter your email address and click on the Start Free Trial button.Step 3: Add a valid password for your account and then click Continue.Step 4: Add details regarding your account and click Continue.

**Step 5:** Select the region where you want to store your monitoring data, click on the radio button for "Yes, I agree to the above terms and conditions," and then click Create Account, as shown in Figure 7-3.



Figure 7-3. Dynatrace SaaS region selection

**Step 6:** After that, you will be redirected to the Dynatrace Welcome page. Click the Deploy Dynatrace button, as shown in Figure 7-4.

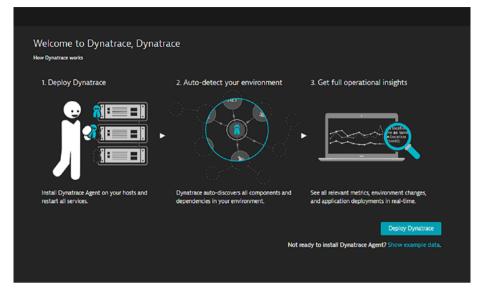


Figure 7-4. Dynatrace SaaS Welcome page

**Step 7:** You will be redirected to the Dynatrace console. Click on the Home icon at the top of the page, as highlighted in Figure 7-5, and it will take you to the Dynatrace home page dashboard.



Figure 7-5. Dynatrace SaaS home page

**Step 8:** On the home page you can see a default dashboard. As of now, since there are no agents reporting to this SAAS instance, there is no data reporting under any of the entities. Only sample data is provided by default. On the left-hand side, there are several tabs available for each

entity that we monitor through Dynatrace. Once the data starts reporting to the console, the user can click on any of the tabs and look at the metrics of that entity, as shown in Figure 7-6.

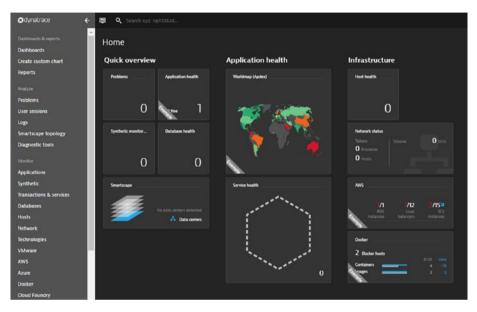


Figure 7-6. Dynatrace SaaS tab navigation

Now we will install a microservice application that will be monitored using Dynatrace. We will use easyTravel Application as the demo application. EasyTravel is a multi-tier application that uses microservice principles. We will use this application to simulate application issues such as high CPU load, database slowdown, or slow authentication. Figure 7-7 is the architecture diagram of the application. We have installed only the customer frontend part of the architecture, which includes nginx, frontend, backend, database, and a load generator.

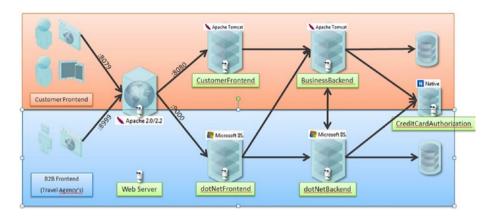


Figure 7-7. Easy Travel Application architecture

Please refer to Table 7-1 to get information about the components used by the travel application.

Component	Description
Mongodb	A pre-populated travel database (MongoDB)
Backend	The easyTravel business backend (Java)
Frontend	The easyTravel customer frontend (Java)
Nginx	A reverse proxy for the easyTravel customer frontend (NGINX)
Loadgen	A synthetic UEM load generator (Java)

Table 7-1. Application Components

# **Containerized Application Deployment**

In this section, you will learn how to deploy the travel application on a Kubernetes cluster with kubectl commands. You can get the application code and its details from the following GitHub URL: https://github.com/ Dynatrace/easyTravel-docker.

**Step 1:** Log in to the Kubernetes master node to install the easyTravel application. Execute the following command to download application files to your server:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/Dynatrace/easyTravel-Docker.git
```

**Step 2:** Now, we will clone easytravel.yaml for this application from GitHub by executing the following command. Once you download the repo you will get rc.yml, service.yml, and pod.yml files in various folders. Using these files, we will create deployment, pods, and services for each component.

```
$ git clone https://github.com/dryice-devops/dynatrace.git
```

**Step 3:** Copy the easytravel.yaml file into the Kubernetes folder / App/microservices-demo/deploy/kubernetes/. Now, let's create a namespace to run this application using Kubernetes by using the following command:

```
$ kubectl create namespace easytravel
```

To verify that the namespace has been created successfully, execute the following command, as shown in Figure 7-8:

### \$ kubect1 get namespace

[root@devops0087	kubernete	s]# kubectl	get	namespace
NAME	STATUS	AGE		
default	Active	10d		
dynatrace	Active	8d		
easytravel	Active	14h		
kube-node-lease	Active	10d		
kube-public	Active	10d		
kube-system	Active	10d		
monitoring	Active	8d		

Figure 7-8. easyTravel application Kubernetes namespace creation

**Step 4:** Now, execute the following command on the Kubernetes master node to create the deployment, services, and pods, as we specified in easytravel.yaml:

```
$ kubectl create -f easytravel.yaml
```

It will create all the components to run the application. Verify by using the following commands, as shown in Figure 7-9:

```
$ kubectl get deployment -n easytravel
```

[root@devo	ops0087	easyTravel-Do	cker] # kubec	tl get	deployment	-n easytravel
NAME	READY	UP-TO-DATE	AVAILABLE	AGE		
backend	1/1	1	1	13h		
frontend	1/1	1	1	14h		
loadgen	1/1	1	1	13h		
mongodb	1/1	1	1	13h		
nginx	1/1	1	1	13h		

Figure 7-9. easyTravel application deployment using Kubernetes

**Step 5:** Now, execute the following command on the Kubernetes master node to fetch a list of pods for the easyTravel application, as shown in Figure 7-10:

### \$ kubectl get pod -n easytravel

[root@devops0087 easyTravel	-Docker]	# kubectl	get pod -n	easytravel
NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
backend-794fc8bcf7-6tdgm	1/1	Running	0	13h
frontend-7d9969499f-2nxws	1/1	Running	0	14h
loadgen-68677457d6-1jds7	1/1	Running	0	13h
mongodb-5db656dd-mhfzb	1/1	Running	0	13h
nginx-68c4bb4ffd-h87zt	1/1	Running	0	13h

Figure 7-10. easyTravel application pod list

**Step 6:** Now, execute the following command on the Kubernetes master node to fetch a list of services for the easyTravel application, as shown in Figure 7-11:

\$ kubectl get service -n easytravel

[root@devo	ops0087 easy	[ravel-Docker]# ku	ubectl get ser	vice -n easytra	vel
NAME	TYPE	CLUSTER-IP	EXTERNAL-IP	PORT (S)	AGE
backend	ClusterIP	10.104.148.186	<none></none>	8091/TCP	13h
frontend	NodePort	10.99.139.181	<none></none>	80:31012/TCP	14h
mongodb	ClusterIP	10.103.157.16	<none></none>	27017/TCP	13h
WWW	ClusterIP	10.106.198.252	<none></none>	80/TCP	13h

# Figure 7-11. easyTravel application service list

Copy the cluster IP for the frontend service for application page access. Navigate to the following URL to access the easyTravel frontend application service:

```
http://< cluster IP >:port
```

In our case, the following is the URL, as shown in Figure 7-12: easyTravel URL: http://10.99.139.181:31012/



*Figure 7-12. easyTravel application frontend page, Dynatrace OneAgent installation* 

# **Monitoring Application using Dynatrace**

In this section, you will learn how to install Dynatrace OneAgent on the Kubernetes cluster to enable the monitoring for the easyTravel application.

**Step 1:** Log in to the Kubernetes master server and create the namespace Dynatrace using the following command:

```
$ kubectl create namespace Dynatrace
```

**Step 2:** Create a LATEST\_RELEASE variable, which will contain the URI for the latest image of the OneAgent operator. Execute the following command:

```
$LATEST_RELEASE=$(curl -s https://api.github.com/repos/
dynatrace/dynatrace-oneagent-operator/releases/latest | grep
tag_name | cut -d '"' -f 4)
```

**Step 3:** Once the variable is created, run the following command to create Dynatrace entities:

\$kubectl create -f https://raw.githubusercontent.com/Dynatrace/
dynatrace-oneagent-operator/\$LATEST\_RELEASE/deploy/kubernetes.
yaml

**Step 4:** Now we check the logs of the OneAgent operator to verify that it is successfully installed on the Kubernetes cluster; we do so by executing the following command:

\$kubectl -n dynatrace logs -f deployment/dynatrace-oneagentoperator

**Step 5:** We will now create the secret holding API and PaaS tokens for authenticating the Dynatrace SaaS setup. To generate and manage API tokens, log in to your Dynatrace environment, and from the navigation menu click Settings ➤ Integration. Select Dynatrace API, Platform as a Service, or Dynatrace modules to generate a token for the Dynatrace API, a token for PaaS, or a token for DCRUM or Synthetic, as shown in Figure 7-13.

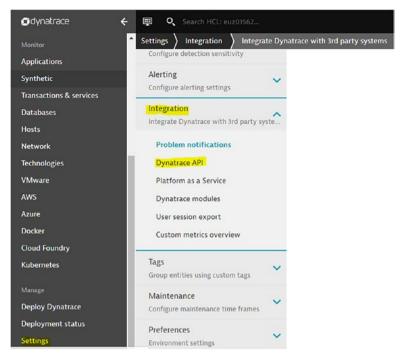


Figure 7-13. Dynatrace API token generation

**Step 6:** Click the Generate Token button as shown in Figure 7-14, and then type a meaningful token name in the text field, as shown in Figure 7-15.

My Dynatrace API tokens	s	Other Dynatrace API tokens		
Generate a secure access API token that en via our REST-based API.	nables access to your Dyn	atrace monitoring data		
<b>⊷</b> 0 Generate token				
API tokens				
Token name	Owner	Disable/enable Delete Edit		
No tokens available.				

Figure 7-14. Dynatrace API token generation

**Step 7:** To create Dynatrace API tokens, select or clear the access switches as needed to set the access scope of the API token. For example, to create an API authentication token to access Dynatrace monitoring data for user session queries, select "User session" as shown in Figure 7-15.

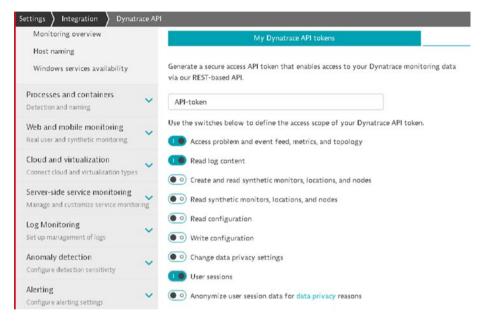


Figure 7-15. Dynatrace API token generation

**Step 8:** Click the Generate button. The token will appear in the My Dynatrace Tokens list, as shown in Figure 7-16.

Settings > Integration > Dynatrace	e API
User session export	• Read audit logs
Remote environments	• Fetch data from a remote environment
Tags Group entities using custom tags	Read entities using API V2
	Write entities using API V2
Maintenance Configure maintenance time frames	<ul> <li>Read network zones using API V2</li> </ul>
Preferences	Write network zones using API V2
Environment settings	Read ActiveGates using API V2
Accounting	Write ActiveGates using API V2
Verify consumption	Read Credential Vault entries
	• Write Credential Vault entries
	Generate Cancel
API tokens	
Token name	OwnerDisable/enable Delete Edit
API-token	hcl.demo.dynatrace@gmail.com 🚺 🗙 🔨
Generated token	
V4I5p4fzT3iYWwP5dMmrQ Copy	
Token name	
API-token	

Figure 7-16. Dynatrace API token generation

**Step 9:** Now, we will create a PaaS token by enacting the following steps. Log in with your Dynatrace account and select "Deploy Dynatrace" from the navigation menu. Click the Set up PaaS Integration button, as shown in Figure 7-17.



Figure 7-17. Dynatrace PaaS token generation

**Step 10:** Your environment ID appears in the Environment ID text box. You'll need this ID to link your Dynatrace account with your PaaS environment. Click Copy to copy the ID to the clipboard. You can do this at any time by revisiting this page, as shown in Figure 7-18.



Figure 7-18. Dynatrace PaaS token generation

**Step 11:** To generate a PaaS token, click the Generate New Token button. The PaaS token is essentially an API token that's used in combination with your environment ID to download Dynatrace OneAgent.

As you'll see, there's also a default InstallerDownload token available that you can alternatively use. However, for security reasons, it's recommended that you create several discrete tokens for each environment you have, as shown in Figure 7-19.



Figure 7-19. Dynatrace PaaS token generation

**Step 12:** Type in a meaningful name for your PaaS token. A meaningful token name might be the name of the PaaS platform you want to monitor (for example, azure, cloud-foundry, or openshift). To view and manage your existing PaaS tokens, go to Settings ➤ Integration ➤ Platform as a Service.

Click Generate to create the PaaS token. The newly created PaaS token will appear in the list below. Click Copy to copy the generated token to the clipboard. You can do this at any time by revisiting this page and clicking Show Token next to the relevant PaaS token.

Step 13: Set up API and PaaS tokens using the following command:

\$kubectl -n dynatrace create secret generic oneagent --fromliteral="apiToken=D62yuwExSpOUe0M1d7\_gE" --from- literal= "paasToken=r\_6pQgOzSwivPXym3dTKp"

**Step 14:** Now, let's create a custom resource for OneAgent. Navigate to the Kubernetes folder /App/microservices-demo/deploy/kubernetes/ and run the following command. This will download the cr.yaml file to your Kubernetes master node.

\$curl -o cr.yaml https://raw.githubusercontent.com/Dynatrace/ dynatrace-oneagent-operator/\$LATEST\_RELEASE/deploy/cr.yaml

**Step 15:** Edit cr.yml and modify the values of the custom resource as indicated below. You need to update the API URL, tokens, and APP\_LOG\_CONTENT variable:

Before making changes, follow the code in Listing 7-1.

## Listing 7-1. Dynatrace OneAgent custom resource cr.yml sample

```
apiVersion: dynatrace.com/v1alpha1
kind: OneAgent
metadata:
  # a descriptive name for this object.
  # all created child objects will be based on it.
  name: oneagent
  namespace: dynatrace
spec:
 # dynatrace api url including `/api` path at the end
  # either set ENVIRONMENTID to the proper tenant id or change
  the apiUrl as a whole, e.q. for Managed
  apiUrl: https://ENVIRONMENTID.live.dynatrace.com/api
  # disable certificate validation checks for installer
  download and API communication
  skipCertCheck: false
 # name of secret holding `apiToken` and `paasToken`
 # if unset, name of custom resource is used
  tokens: ""
```

```
# node selector to control the selection of nodes (optional)
nodeSelector: {}
# https://kubernetes.io/docs/concepts/configuration/taint-
and-toleration/ (optional)
tolerations:
- effect: NoSchedule
  key: node-role.kubernetes.io/master
  operator: Exists
# oneagent installer image (optional)
# certified image from RedHat Container Catalog for use on
OpenShift: registry.connect.redhat.com/dynatrace/oneagent
# for kubernetes it defaults to docker.io/dynatrace/oneagent
image: ""
# arguments to oneagent installer (optional)
# https://www.dynatrace.com/support/help/shortlink/oneagent-
docker#limitations
args:
- APP LOG CONTENT ACCESS=1
# environment variables for oneagent (optional)
env: []
# resource settings for oneagent pods (optional)
# consumption of oneagent heavily depends on the workload to
monitor
# please adjust values accordingly
#resources:
#
   requests:
#
     cpu: 100m
#
     memory: 512Mi
  limits:
#
#
     cpu: 300m
#
     memory: 1.5Gi
```

# priority class to assign to oneagent pods (optional)

# https://kubernetes.io/docs/concepts/configuration/pod-

priority-preemption/

#priorityClassName: PRIORITYCLASS

# disables automatic restarts of oneagent pods in case a new version is available

#disableAgentUpdate: false

# when enabled, and if Istio is installed on the Kubernetes environment, then the Operator will create the corresponding # VirtualService and ServiceEntries objects to allow access to the Dynatrace cluster from the agent.

#enableIstio: false

# DNS Policy for OneAgent pods (optional.) Empty for default (ClusterFirst), more at

# https://kubernetes.io/docs/concepts/services-networking/
dns-pod-service/#pod-s-dns-policy
"""

#dnsPolicy: ""

# Labels are customer-defined labels for oneagent pods to structure workloads as desired

#labels:

# custom: label

# Name of the service account for the OneAgent (optional)
#serviceAccountName: "dynatrace-oneagent"

# Configures a proxy for the Agent, AgentDownload, and the Operator (optional)

# Either provide the proxy URL directly at 'value' or create a secret with a field 'proxy' which holds your encrypted proxy URL

#proxy:

# value: https://my-proxy-url.com

# valueFrom: name-of-my-proxy-secret

```
# Adds the provided CA certficates to the Operator and the
OneAgent (optional)
# Provide the name of the configmap which holds your .pem in
a field called 'certs'
# If this is not set the default embedded certificates on the
images will be used
#trustedCAs: name-of-my-ca-configmap
# Sets a NetworkZone for the OneAgent (optional)
# Note: This feature requires OneAgent version 1.195 or
higher
#networkZone: name-of-my-network-zone
```

Edit ENVIRONMENTID to be the environment ID of your SaaS instance. For example, in our case it's euz01562. You can navigate to your Dynatrace SaaS instance and get the environment ID from its URL, as highlighted in Figure 7-20.

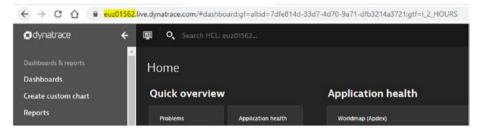


Figure 7-20. Dynatrace environment ID

For tokens, set the value to the name of the secret that we have created: oneagent. Set APP\_LOG\_CONTENT\_ACCESS=1 and env: [].

After making required changes, Listing 7-2 will be the contents of the cr.yml file.

#### *Listing* 7-2. Dynatrace oneagent custom resource cr.yml

```
apiVersion: dynatrace.com/v1alpha1
kind: OneAgent
metadata:
  # a descriptive name for this object.
  # all created child objects will be based on it.
  name: oneagent
  namespace: dynatrace
spec:
 # dynatrace api url including `/api` path at the end
  # either set ENVIRONMENTID to the proper tenant id or change
 the apiUrl as a whole, e.q. for Managed
 apiUrl: https://euz01562.live.dynatrace.com/api
  # disable certificate validation checks for installer
  download and API communication
  skipCertCheck: false
 # name of secret holding `apiToken` and `paasToken`
 # if unset, name of custom resource is used
 tokens: "oneagent"
  # node selector to control the selection of nodes (optional)
  nodeSelector: {}
  # https://kubernetes.io/docs/concepts/configuration/taint-
 and-toleration/ (optional)
  tolerations:
  - effect: NoSchedule
    key: node-role.kubernetes.io/master
    operator: Exists
  # oneagent installer image (optional)
  # certified image from RedHat Container Catalog for use on
 OpenShift: registry.connect.redhat.com/dynatrace/oneagent
 # for kubernetes it defaults to docker.io/dynatrace/oneagent
```

```
image: ""
# arguments to oneagent installer (optional)
# https://www.dynatrace.com/support/help/shortlink/oneagent-
docker#limitations
args:
- APP LOG CONTENT ACCESS=1
# environment variables for oneagent (optional)
env: []
# resource settings for oneagent pods (optional)
# consumption of oneagent heavily depends on the workload to
monitor
# please adjust values accordingly
#resources:
#
  requests:
#
    cpu: 100m
#
    memory: 512Mi
# limits:
#
    cpu: 300m
#
    memory: 1.5Gi
# priority class to assign to oneagent pods (optional)
# https://kubernetes.io/docs/concepts/configuration/pod-
priority-preemption/
#priorityClassName: PRIORITYCLASS
# disables automatic restarts of oneagent pods in case a new
version is available
#disableAgentUpdate: false
# when enabled, and if Istio is installed on the Kubernetes
environment, then the Operator will create the corresponding
# VirtualService and ServiceEntries objects to allow access
to the Dynatrace cluster from the agent.
```

#enableIstio: false

# DNS Policy for OneAgent pods (optional.) Empty for default (ClusterFirst), more at # https://kubernetes.io/docs/concepts/services-networking/ dns-pod-service/#pod-s-dns-policy #dnsPolicy: "" # Labels are customer defined labels for oneagent pods to structure workloads as desired #labels: # custom: label # Name of the service account for the OneAgent (optional) #serviceAccountName: "dynatrace-oneagent" # Configures a proxy for the Agent, AgentDownload, and the Operator (optional) # Either provide the proxy URL directly at 'value' or create a secret with a field 'proxy' which holds your encrypted proxy URL #proxy: # value: https://my-proxy-url.com # valueFrom: name-of-my-proxy-secret # Adds the provided CA certficates to the Operator and the OneAgent (optional) # Provide the name of the config map which holds your .pem in a field called 'certs' # If this is not set the default embedded certificates on the images will be used #trustedCAs: name-of-my-ca-configmap # Sets a NetworkZone for the OneAgent (optional) # Note: This feature requires OneAgent version 1.195 or higher #networkZone: name-of-my-network-zone

**Step 15:** Create the custom resource by executing the following command:

\$ kubectl create -f cr.yaml

**Step 16:** Now, we will install an ActiveGate component to connect our Kubernetes cluster with Dynatrace SaaS. Log in to the Dynatrace console and select "Deploy Dynatrace." Then, click on Install ActiveGate, as shown in Figure 7-21.

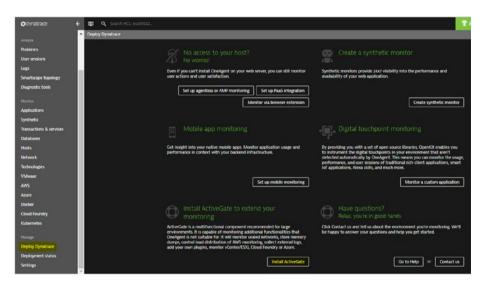


Figure 7-21. Dynatrace ActiveGate installation

**Step 17:** Select "Linux" and click Copy underneath "Run this command on the target host to download the installer"; run it onto the server where we are installing the OneAgent operator. It will download the installer as shown in Figure 7-22.



Figure 7-22. Dynatrace ActiveGate installation

\$wget -0 Dynatrace-ActiveGate-Linux-x86-1.181.144.sh
"https://euz01562.live.dynatrace.com/api/v1/deployment/
installer/gateway/unix/latest?arch=x86&flavor=default"
--header="Authorization: Api-Token hzgdWMfkRBiz4gcGDin5J"

**Step 18:** Execute the installer to install ActiveGate. After this, we can proceed to further Kubernetes-related configuration.

```
$./Dynatrace-ActiveGate-Linux-x86-1.181.144.sh
```

**Step 19:** In previous steps, we have cloned a file named kubernetesmonitoring-service-account.yaml. Readers can review the content of this file in Listing 7-3, as we will use this file in the next step.

Listing 7-3. Dynatrace Kubernetes monitoring configuration file

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ServiceAccount
metadata:
```

```
name: dynatrace-monitoring
  namespace: dynatrace
- - -
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: ClusterRole
metadata:
  name: dynatrace-monitoring-cluster
rules:
- apiGroups:
  _ ""
  resources:
  - nodes
  - pods
  verbs:
  - list
_ _ _
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: ClusterRoleBinding
metadata:
  name: dynatrace-monitoring-cluster
roleRef:
  apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
  kind: ClusterRole
  name: dynatrace-monitoring-cluster
subjects:
- kind: ServiceAccount
  name: dynatrace-monitoring
  namespace: dynatrace
```

**Step 20:** Create a service account and cluster role for accessing the Kubernetes API with the following snippet:

\$ kubectl apply -f kubernetes-monitoring-service-account.yaml

**Step 21:** Get the Kubernetes API URL for later use using the following command:

```
$ kubectl config view --minify -o jsonpath='{.clusters[0].
cluster.server}'
```

**Step 22:** Get the Bearer token for later use using the following command:

```
$ kubectl get secret $(kubectl get sa dynatrace-monitoring -o
jsonpath='{.secrets[0].name}' -n dynatrace) -o jsonpath='{.
data.token}' -n dynatrace | base64 -decode
```

**Step 23:** Now, let's connect the Kubernetes cluster through Dynatrace settings. Log in to Dynatrace and navigate to Settings ➤ Cloud. Go to Virtualization ➤ Kubernetes. Click Connect New Cluster. Provide a name, Kubernetes API URL, and the Bearer token for the Kubernetes cluster, as shown in Figure 7-23.

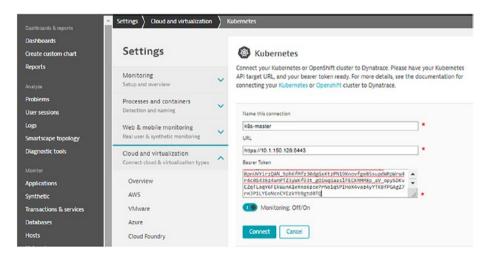


Figure 7-23. Dynatrace and Kubernetes integration

**Step 24:** Once the cluster is added successfully, it will be listed like in Figure 7-24.

Kubernetes			
Connect your Kubernetes or OpenShift cluster to Dynatrace. Please have your Kubernetes API target URL, and your bearer token ready. For more details, see the documentation for connecting your Kubernetes or Openshift duster to Dynatrace.			
Connect new duster Q k8s-master https://10.1150.126.6443/	Monitorine: On	,	~

Figure 7-24. Dynatrace and Kubernetes integration

## **Container Metrics on Dynatrace**

Now that we have integrated Dynatrace with our Kubernetes setup and deployed the easyTravel application, let's navigate the console to view the container application monitoring metrics. OneAgent will do full-stack monitoring, including infrastructure, Docker, and code-level monitoring, for the hosted applications.

**Step 1:** Log in to Dynatrace. The home dashboard will now report additional data, as shown in Figure 7-25.

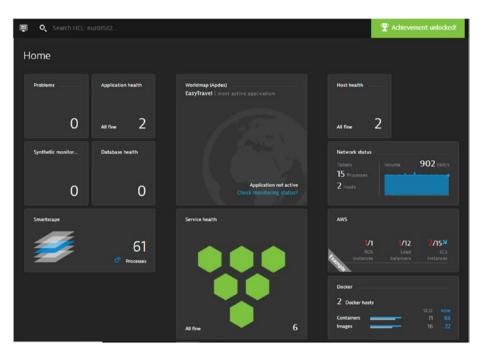


Figure 7-25. Dynatrace dashboard after Kubernetes integration

**Step 2:** To view the Kubernetes cluster status, navigate to the Kubernetes tab at the left-hand side and then click on the cluster, as shown in Figure 7-26.

Ødynatrace	← III O, Search HCL: euz01562		😤 Achievement unlocked!	< Last 2 hours 🗲 💻
	* Kubernetes			
Applications Synthetic Transactions & services	Overview of all Kubernetes clusters (managed	groups of uniform VM instances for running	Kubernetes)	
Databases	Please provide feedback and find planned enhancemen	ts at Dynatrace answers 🖪.		
Hosts Network	1 Cluster			
Technologies VMware	Name •	Nodes #	CPU total 2 Memory (	requested = Memory total =
aws	kös-master	2	4 Cores	304 MB 15.1 GE
zure locker				
lloud Foundry				
Kubernetes				

Figure 7-26. Dynatrace Kubernetes cluster metrics

By clicking on the cluster, we can look at cluster utilization. It will show the CPU and memory utilization based on usage, requests, limits, and availability. The same pane will show the number of nodes running under that cluster, as shown in Figure 7-27.

'U usage				Memory usage			
10 N			4.8 Cores	100 N			
5 N			3.6 Cores	75 N			11
0 N			2.4 Cores	50 N			
n l			12 Cones	25 N			
i N			0 mCores	ON			
10.15	16:30 16:45 17:00	17.15 17.30 17.45	18:00	10.1	5 10:30 10:45	17:00 17:15 17:30	17,45 18.00
	CPU usage (%)	CPU total			Mer.	ory usage (%) It Memory total	

Figure 7-27. Dynatrace Kubernetes cluster metrics

**Step 3:** By clicking the Analyze Nodes button, the page will showcase the CPU and memory utilization for the individual nodes running under this Kubernetes cluster, as shown in Figure 7-28.

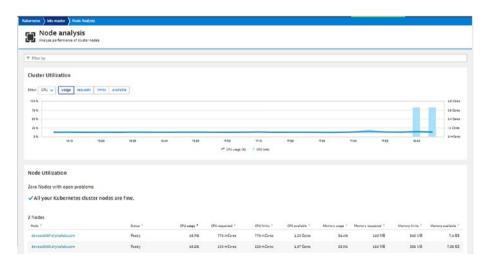


Figure 7-28. Dynatrace Kubernetes cluster node metrics

**Step 4:** To take a closer look at these nodes, we can go to the Hosts tab from the navigation menu. Here, the nodes are listed out as hosts, as shown in Figure 7-29.

dynatrace	🗧 📮 🔍 Search HOL: e					T Achieven	ent unlocked	< Last 2 hour	
User sessions	<ul> <li>Hosts</li> </ul>								
Logs Smartscape topology	🖺 Hosts 🥖							Pin to o	lashboard -
Diagnostic tools	Y Filter by								
Applications Synthetic Transactions & services	Problem impact any	edit	2 Hosts	Operating system	Virtualization :	CPU state :	Memory usings :	Disclatency :	Network traffic
Databases Hosts	State any	edit	evopsonszdryścelabs.com	Linux	VM/ware		42 % of 7.64 GB	1.2 ms	374 kbit/s
Network Technologies	Monitoring mode any	edit	devops0088.dryicelabs.com	Unux	VMware	13 N	73 % of 7.64 GB	3.21 ms	524 kbit/s
Mwae WS	Technology any	edit							
urum tocker loud Foundry	Tags any	edit							
ubernetes mage	Operating system any	edit							
enage Reploy Dynatrace Reployment status	Type any	edit							

Figure 7-29. Dynatrace Kubernetes Host view

Individual Host pages show problem history, event history, and related processes for each host. To assess health, the following performance metrics are captured for each host and presented on each Host overview page, as shown in Figure 7-30:

CPU Memory Disk (storage health) NIC (network health)

Hosts devops0087.dryicelabs.com	
devops0087.dryicelak	os.com
> Properties	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server 7.5 (Maipo) (kernel 3.10.0-	862.el7.x86_64) 12 more
0 15 % CPU	O 42 % Memory
■ 3 Processes 1 Host	
A 2 NG	Disk
CPU usage 15 %	System Load 0.13
K8s CPU requests 770 mCores	K8s CPU limits 770 mCores
Actively used CPU of the host as a percentage of available	CPU.
100 %	
0%	16:00 16:30
15:00 15:30	
	Consuming processes

Figure 7-30. Dynatrace Kubernetes Host view

On the same page, we can see if there is any connectivity from this host to any another host, as shown in Figure 7-31.

Ødynatrace ← 💷 🔍 Search HCL: eeroise2	👻 Achievement unlocked! 🗶 Last 2 hours 🗦 🔲 🛔
Disarboards & rooms Disarboards Create outom chart Create outom chart	No problems Today, 1431 - 1631
Reports > Properties	100% Availability in last 7 days
Avagen         Red Mit Enterprise Laws/Server 10 (Maps) (terrel 12:0-152 attraction)         12:0-152 attraction (Linux Server 11 (Maps) (terrel 12:0-152 attraction))           Virsbörns         Virsbörns         15:x         42 x           Virsbörns         15:x         42 x	o min total downtime
Logs Smartscape topology	14. Dec
Diagonstit task	Running
Applications Synthetik Monitored hosts Transition & survives	Processes and Containers
Databases Name - Processes transfer Connections Connectivity Potransmissions	eloudiwatch, exporter, *-jar-with-dependencies jar nobel-agent jar
Hosts dryxelabs.com 310.2 kbit/s 2.55/min 100% 0%.	Go azure_metrics_reporter cadirisor
Technologes Vahuara Noo	uning "goulopagie-containers'calvise" node reporter my-node-exporter (my-node-exporter (my-node-exporter-prome throus node-exporter-dolh) uning "shazis"

Figure 7-31. Dynatrace Kubernetes Host view

**Step 5:** On the same page, at the right-hand side, a complete list of processes and containers running on this host can be seen. We can view easyTravel processes and containers on this page, as shown in Figure 7-32.

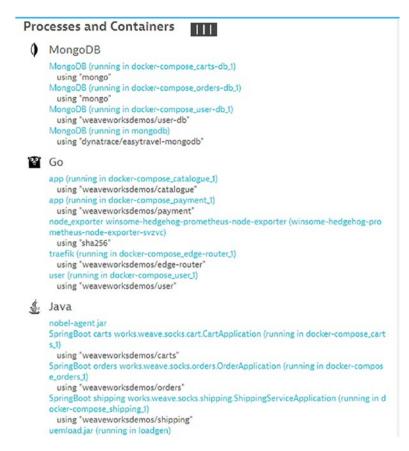


Figure 7-32. Dynatrace Kubernetes Processes and Containers view

On the same page, by clicking on View Container, we can see the containers grouped by image type, as shown in Figure 7-33.

Name 0	CPU o	Memory -	Traffic 0	CPU throttling o	Details
dynatrace/easytravel-backend	0.92 %	2 GB	22.5 kbit/s	0 ms	~
sha256	0.23 %	622 MB	•	0 ms	~
weaveworksdemos/queue-master	0.28 %	492 MB	5.14 kbit/s	0 ms	~
dynatrace/easytravel-frontend	1,19 %	484 MB	39.6 kbit/s	0 ms	~
dynatrace/easytravel-loadgen	0.75 %	393 MB	13.5 kbit/s	0 ms	~
dynatrace/oneagent	24 %	315 MB		0 ms	~
weaveworksdemos/carts	0.06 %	259 MB	368 bit/s	0 ms	~
weaveworksdemos/orders	0.05 %	247 MB	368 bit/s	0 ms	~
weaveworksdemos/shipping	0.07 %	247 MB	o bit/s	0 ms	~
weaveworksdemos/catalogue-db	0.04 %	191 MB	0 bit/s	0 ms	~

#### IIII Containers grouped by image name

#### Figure 7-33. Dynatrace Containers Grouped by Image Name view

**Step 6:** Expand one of the images to view the details regarding those containers running using this image. In this view, the following details are available, as shown in Figure 7-34.

**CPU:** CPU user divided by CPU system, expressed as a percentage.

**Memory:** Resident Set Size (RSS) and cache memory. RSS reflects data belonging to processes, while cache memory represents the data stored on disk that is currently cached in memory.

Traffic: Both incoming and outgoing network traffic

**Throttling:** Total time that a container's CPU usage was throttled

s	k8s-master	Contai	HERS.										
N	ame :						CPU o		Memory •	1	Traffic ::	CPU throttling	: Detail
\$	h#255						0.45 %		842 MB			o m	is ^
		CPU			M	emory			Traffic	_		Throttling	
01													
	215	00	21:10	21:20	21:10	21:40	21:50	22:00	22:10	22:20	22:00	22:40	22 50
	kūs,kube-api	server, kub	e-apiserver-kös	s-master_kube-sys	item_67170010130	fc11b42bcb7ce0a	fc3503_0		1.91 %	DED MB	(4.71 %)		0 ms
	kas_etcd_etcd	-k\$s-mast	er_kube-system		226 a71002f291c6	adš_0			0.46 %	250 MB	(6.57 %)		o ms
	kts_kube-con	troller-ma	nager_kube-con	vtroller-manager-k	kös-master_kube-	system_f538450f	903449010370602	4ba38b53b_0	0.34 %	42.7 MB (	0.55 %)		0 ms
•	kūs_kube-sch	kös, kube-scheduler, kube-scheduler-kös-master, kube-system, 74 deaß dat 7aa 624 te Se 477b2 ba4e1 d8e_0								N 17.2 MB (0.22 %)			0 ms
	kts_kube-pro	k8s,kube-proxy_bube-proxy-57kfh,kube-system_1bf26886+9c87-4c2f-8e1f-5e70c2e88885,0							0.07 %	0.07 % 172 MB (0.22 %)			0 ms
	k0s_coredns_c	credins-50	4407b6d9-mw1	hbt_kube-system_	1e37eac2-3492-42	bc-ac80-b7cc6ff	7cf01_0		0.12 %	15.9 MB (	9.30 %)		0 ms

## Figure 7-34. Dynatrace container metrics

For the processes, details are captured as shown in Figure 7-35.

	CPU 32 %		Me	mory 6.72 G	3	Traf	ffic 94,4 kl	bit/s	Ret	ransmission	5 0.19 %	Conne	ctivity 0 %
100 %													
50 %													
	~~~	~~~~	~~~	~~~		m	~~		~~~	~~~	~~~		~
0%													
0 %	17:10	17:20	17:30	17:40	17:50	18:00	18: M Other	10 18 er processes	20 1	8:30	18:40	18:50 19:00	
		17:20	17:30	17:40	17:50		rd Other			8:30 Memory o		18:50 19:00 Retransmissions	
Process o	17:10	17:20	17:30	17:40	17:50		rd Other	er processes			Traffic o	Retransmissions	
Process © Other pro	17:10	17:20	17:30	17:40	17:50		rd Other	er processes	CPU • 24 %	Memory o	Traffic o	Retransmissions	Connectivity
Process () Other pro kubelet	17:10 DCCESSES		17:30				C1 Other Typ	r processes pe p Kubernetes Apache To	CPU • 24 % 5 1.33 %	Memory e 1.11 GB	Traffic 0 94,4 kbit/s	Retransmissions	<ul> <li>Connectivity</li> <li>-</li> </ul>

Figure 7-35. Dynatrace Kubernetes process metrics

**Step 7:** On the navigation menu, we can see a summary of the most relevant details of the Docker, as shown in Figure 7-36. The graphical view at the top of the page displays the following:

Number of running containers

Number of Docker images

Top three containers consuming the most memory

Most recently started container

Most frequently used images

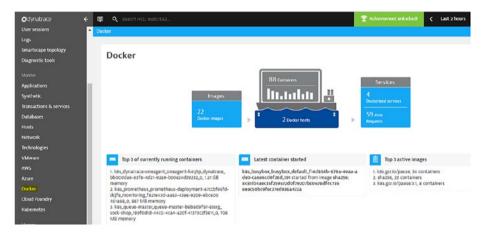
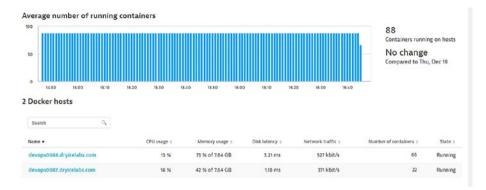


Figure 7-36. Dynatrace Docker dashboard view

The Docker Hosts section at the bottom of the page shows the resource usage of individual Docker hosts, including number of containers running, as shown in Figure 7-37.



## Figure 7-37. Dynatrace Docker view

**Step 8:** Click on the Application tab to view application monitoring metrics, as shown in Figure 7-38.

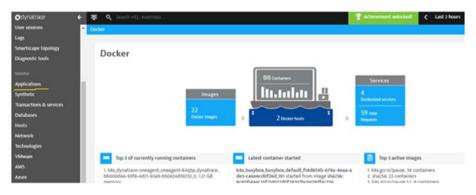


Figure 7-38. Dynatrace application monitoring

By default, there will be an application created called "My web application." All the traffic will report to this application at first. Now, let's create a new application using the following steps. Navigate to Settings ➤ Web & mobile Monitoring ➤ Application Detection and run as shown in Figure 7-39.

hoblems	Monitoring overview		techn	ology monitoring via custom plugins or Dynatrace API.			_
lser sessions	Host naming		Ad	id new technology monitoring			
ogs martscape topology							
Regnostic tools	Processes and containers Detection and naming	~		Supported technologies	Custon	n plugins	_
Antor	Web & mobile monitoring	~	Tech	vzolor	Type	Global monitoring Off/On	
pplications	Real your & synthetic monitoring						
nthetic	Source maps and symbol files		٠	Plugin manager	OneAgent plugin		
ansactions & services	User experience score					-	
itabases				Configure Couchbase	OneAgent plugin		
asta	Geographic regions			Configure CouchDB	On+Agent plugin	-	
rtwork	Map IP addresses to locations			Configure CouchDB	CineAgent plugin		
stnekgies	IP determination			Docker technology monitoring	OneAgent plugin	-	
/ware	Centerd resources			Requires Dynamuse Chalgers venion 1.81 or later	Unexpert progin		
N5	Provider breakdown			Cenfigure Elasticsearch	OneApent plugin		
wie .				Configure Ease Gearen	Unexperit progin		
xker	Resource URL deanup rules			Elasticsearch Cloud	Surry country Dynatrace ActiveGate plugin		
oud Foundry	Resource types			East clear to Croo	Contraction Contraction Activity Contraction		
abemetes	Web applications			Configure HAProxy	One-Agent plugin	-	
anage	Application detection & RUM			Regulare Dynamical Disalgent version 178 ar later		-	
ploy Dynatrace	Advanced setup		M	Mencached	OneAgent plugin		
ployment status	Sectoria manifest						
ttings	Private synthetic locations			Configure MongoD8 Equite Durance Chalger vector 181 or lane	OneAgent plugin		

Figure 7-39. Dynatrace easyTravel application onboarding

Click on Create Application Detection Rule, as shown in Figure 7-40.

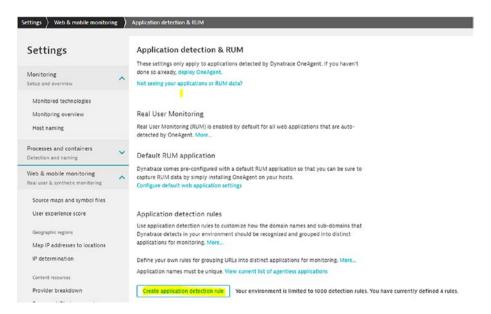


Figure 7-40. Dynatrace easyTravel application onboarding

Now click on New Application. Give a name for the application and then define some rules for the web requests. Then, click on Save, as shown in Figure 7-41.

Settings > Web & mobile monito	ring >	Application detection & RUM Create application detection rule
Settings		O Create application detection rule New polymers New for ann application that rule exects:
Monitoring Setup and overview	^	New application     Lasytawei-App
Monitored technologies Monitoring overview Host naming		Existing application This name will be used as the internal ID for this application. You can create multiple grouping rules for the same application by creating multiple rules that reference the same application name.
Processes and containers Detection and naming	~	Define when web requests are part of this application: If the domain (host)
Web & mobile monitoring Real user & synthetic monitoring	^	Texted a
Source maps and symbol files User experience score Geographic regions		Dample: If the domain matches mytholokshop.com then the following URLs will be grouped into this web application: http://www.mytholshop.com/forum/index.php?leasthetive and http://www.mytholshop.com/forum/index.php?leasthetive
Map IP addresses to locations		Serie Cover

Figure 7-41. Dynatrace easyTravel application onboarding

This will create an application under the Application tab. Rules can be defined based on domain and URLs. Here, we are using the domain for detecting web requests. Our application domain is 10.1.150.150. So, we have specified the same in the rule. Now, whenever a request comes to this domain, it will get registered under easyTravel, as shown in Figure 7-42.

Q Search HCL oplications	. 00201392					T Achievement unlocked	< Last 2	nours >
E Search	<b>II</b> Q	Web applications /					🖈 Pinto	dashboard
All	3	Y Filtered by Application type: Web applications X						
Monitored	2	Name :	Apdex ‡	Actions :	Load actions :	XHR actions :	JavaScript errors :	3rd party / CDN
Unmonitored	1	EasyTravel No user actions during past 38 min	Good	0.07 /min	Visually complete: 3.2 s	Visually complete: 0.5 s	0.00 /min	0.02 /m
Application from		My web application The user actions during part 14.1h 1     min					-	

Figure 7-42. Dynatrace easyTravel application onboarding

**Step 9:** To view the easyTravel application, we navigate to Applications and click on easyTravel, as shown in Figure 7-43.

	🗧 😨 🔍 Search HCL: eva						T Achievement unlocker	tast 2	hours >
Pecblems	Applications								
User sessions	-								
togs			Web applications /					# Pint	b dashboard
Smartscape topology	Search	0,	approxim						1000
Diegnostic tools			Fittened by:						
Maxter	44		Y Filtered by Application type: Web applications X	1					
	v Status			Status					
Applications	Monitored	2	Name :	injection type x	Actions :	Load actions a		JavaScript errors :	
Synthetic	Unmonitored					Visually complete:			
Transactions & services			EasyTravel No user actions during part 55 min	Good	0.07 /min	100011 Complete.	Visually complete: 0.5 s	0.00 /min	0.02 /min
Databases			My web application House action during part 14	÷					
Hasts	<ul> <li>Application type</li></ul>	_	min						
Network	Web applications	×	webapplication						
Technologies									
VMware	V Injection type								
ANS	Auto injected	3							
Azere									

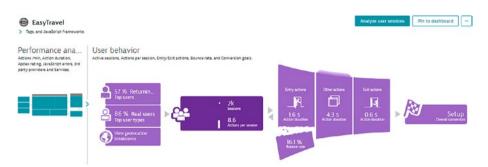
Figure 7-43. Dynatrace easyTravel application metrics

We will view the application as seen in Figure 7-44.



Figure 7-44. Dynatrace easyTravel application metrics

By clicking on User Behavior, we will see the screen in Figure 7-45.



## Figure 7-45. Dynatrace easyTravel application metrics

On the same page, we can see the user actions and errors, as shown in Figure 7-46.

		A change in error levels may indicate a device- or browser-specific problem.	
0 ms		0 /min JavaScript (0.02 /min) HTTP (0.00 /min) Custom	(0.00 /min)
25. Nov 2. De — Visually complete dd Total XHR :		npiete Earce	Frequency
		Unexpected end of input = jquery-110.2/min js	< 0.01./m/n
ustom actions Median Slowest 101	N Fastest 10%	anvalid argument - joueryjs	<0.01/min
1.5 1		0.3 /min Unable to get property 'find' of undefined or null reference	< 0.01/min
11	1	Uncaught TypeError: Cannot read property 'style' of undefined - di_countdown.js	<0.01/min
		Uncaught TypeError: 'undefined' is not an object (evaluating 'CXCA_output(tzoneid)') = cxc_adtech-tidpt0d-min.js	< 0.01/min
\$00 ms		0.1 /min Uncaught Error: Syntax error, unrecognized expression: /test = jquery=311/min;s	< 0.01 /min
0 ms 25. Nov 2. De	c 9. Dec 16. Dec	0 /min Demo Error for generated stacktrace – myscript js	< 0.01./min
User action of		Error: Script error for: http://connect.facebook.net/de_DE/ail.js = require.js	<0.01/min
	Compare to previous time frame Analyze per	formance Demo Error for generated stacktrace	< 0.01.min
6		document getElementsByClassName("dl-btn-countdown")[0] is undefined =	< 0.01 /min

Figure 7-46. Dynatrace easyTravel application metrics

By clicking on any of the errors, we can see the details of the errors captured, as shown in Figure 7-47.



#### Figure 7-47. Dynatrace easyTravel application metrics

Here, we can see the occurrences of the error, browser, OS, and location-specific details. Below that we can see a detailed description of the error, as shown in Figure 7-48.



#### Figure 7-48. Dynatrace easyTravel application metrics

So, by using the preceding drill-down, we can identify the root cause of all the errors in our container application.

## **Application Topology**

In Dynatrace there is a feature called Smartscape. Smartscape autodiscovery delivers a quick and efficient overview of all the topological dependencies in your infrastructure, processes, and services, both on the vertical axis (where full-stack dependencies across all tiers are displayed) as well as on the horizontal axis (where all ingoing and outgoing call relationships within each tier are visualized). Let's view the Smartscape topology for our easyTravel application.

**Step 1:** To view the easyTravel application topology, click on Smartscape Topology, as shown in Figure 7-49.

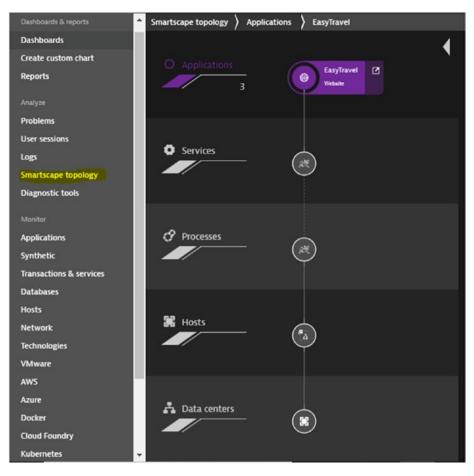


Figure 7-49. Dynatrace easyTravel application topology

To see a detailed description of the easyTravel processes, click on Host and select the target node host. Under Processes and Containers, click any process to explore that process in detail on a dedicated process page.

On each process page, you'll find process-specific statistics related to CPU consumption, memory consumption, network utilization (see Figure 7-50), and other infrastructure measurements. You'll also find details regarding related events, problems, and dependencies (including called and calling process).

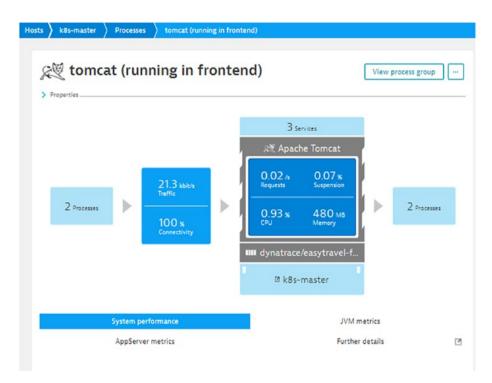


Figure 7-50. Dynatrace easyTravel application processes

At the top of this process page, we can also see provided services, as shown in Figure 7-50.

In this Figure 7-51, a topology is created for every process, and we can see its caller and called processes as well by clicking on the Process tab at the left and right-hand side, as shown in Figure 7-50.

lo problen	15 Nov 29 2019, 00	:12 - Today, 00:12				
8.9% Avai 0 min total d	<b>lability</b> owntime Last dov	vntime on 04-12-2019 17:34	- 17:55			
18:00	S. Dec	05:00	12:00		18:00	6. Dec
Events M	20 2010 00-12 - T	May 0012			Descent such dates?	
Events No	ov 29 2019, 00:12 - Te	iday, 00:12			Process crash detail:	\$
8 2 1 0 29. Nov	88. Nov	1. Dec 2. Dec	8. Dec	4. Dec	Process crash details	5 6. Dec
8 2 1	88. Nov			4. Dec	S. Dec	5
e 2 1 29. Nov 29. Nov Events 0	80. Nov Istart	1. Dec 2. Dec	iged	4. Dec	S. Dec	5. Dec

Figure 7-51. Dynatrace easyTravel application processes

## **Transactions and Services**

We can check the availability of the processes, and in the graph itself we can see if a process was shut down at any point in time. Below that there will be a list of events for this process. If any changes have been made in the process deployment, there will be an event listed for this. If the process was restarted, there will be an event for this as well.

**Step 1:** When you look at processes, you're seeing topology information, whereas services give you code-level insight. To view service-specific details in Dynatrace, go to Transactions & Services and click on one of the services, as shown in Figure 7-52.

< → c û .	euz01562.live.dynatrace	.com/#r	ewservices:gf=all:gtf=L_6_HOURS	Q 🛧 Q 🗆 🛛 🔿	• • •
odynatrace 📢	e 进 🍳 Search HCL:	euz01562		T Achievement unlock	ed! 🔇 Last 6 he
	Transactions & services				
Dashboards	O Services	5/			Pint
Create custom chart					
Reports	♥ Start typing to sel	ect a filter	category or filter by name		
Problems	Problem impact	ecit	8 Services		showing
User sessions	any	906	Name 4	Response time median 1	Failure rate 0
ogs	Service type		1		
Smartscape topology	any	edit	press coudwatch.exporterjar coudwatch-exporter-prometheus-doudwatch-exporter*	101 µs	0 %
Nagnestic tools	Technology		1000 sadvisr	801 ms	0.8
	any	edit			
Applications	Tags		and casyTravel Customer Frontend		
iynthetic	any	edit			
liansactions & services			Request on port 8080	473 µs	100 %
Jatabases					
losts			Requests executed in background threads of tomcat frontend-* terrat frontend-*	764 µs	100 %
letwork.			Requests executed in background threads of tomcat frontend-easytravel-*		
fechnologies			Requests executed in background threads of tomcat frontend-easytravel-" tomat frontend-easytravel-"	1.11 ms	100 %
Wiware	-		Requests executed in background threads of uemioad jar loadgen-*		
AWS			👻 vemicad jar leadgen."	473 µ3	100 %

#### Figure 7-52. Dynatrace easyTravel application transaction metrics

For every service, we can see the caller and calling requests, number of requests, and response time, including dynamic web requests and resource requests, as shown in Figure 7-53.

easyTravel Customer Frontend Smarticape view -	2 Problems Nov 29 2019, 00 55 - Today, 00 35
Properties and tage	easyfravel Customer Frontend Dec 5 01:22 - Dec 5 01:59 (27 minutes)
Applications 1.5 /min 8	Problem 367: Multiple service problems
Services	easyTravel Customer Frontend Dec 4 19:58 - Dec 4 20:24 (26 minutes)
1 Network	^
Dynamic web requests	No recent hotspots detected Today, 00:25 - 00:35
Response time Failure rate 0 w	Multidimensional analysis views Create chart This section will list your bookmarked multidimensional analysis views for this service. Click 'Create chart' to start.
CPU 48.5 Throughput	Understand dependencies Westerday, 00.35 - Today, 00.35
View dynamic requests	Understand all dependencies and response time contributions View service flow

Figure 7-53. Dynatrace easyTravel application transaction metrics

By clicking on View Dynamic Requests, we can see all the requests coming to this service. On the same page, we can see the response time and failure requests, including CPU and throughput. At the top right corner, we can have an overview of the problems with this service, as shown in Figure 7-54.

	Request type: Dynamic w	eb requests X							
	Response time	Response time Failure rate		CPU			 Throughput		
w Medi	an Slowest 10 % Slowe	it 5 %							
600 s					•	-			
						1.1			7
400 s									5
200 s					_				
									2

#### Figure 7-54. Dynatrace easyTravel application transaction metrics

For every service, we can see a graph of response time, failure rate, CPU, and throughput for all web requests coming to this service, as shown in Figure 7-55.

op requests			Create	chart Web request r	naming rule
Y Start typing to filter					
Name :			Total time consumption +	Median response time :	Action
1				234 min	La 🔻 -
/orange.jsf			1	23.4 ms	₩ 7 -
/CalculateRecommendations				318 ms	W ¥ ·
/privacy-orange.jsf				7.23 ms	la 🔻 -
/special-offers.jsp				326 ms	W Y -
/logout.jsf				65.9 ms	la v -
Jorange-booking-review.jsf				10.9 ms	W Y -
Jorange-booking-payment jsf				231 ms	la 🔻 -
/legal-orange.jsf	/icefaces/resource/LTEy//IDE20DIM40Ti+			7.25 ms	la ₹ -
/contact-orange.jsf	Values are calculated over whole timeframe.			7.39 ms	. w .
/orange-booking-finish.jsf	Processed requests Total processed requests	0.9 /min 600		8.68 ms	W 7 -
/about-orange.jsf	Response time median Response time slowest 10%	121 ms 2.55 ms		88.7 ms	
/j.invalidate.session	Response time slowest 5%. Failure rate	3.36 ms		550 µs	la ₹ ·
/icefaces/resource/MTAwNTASNDESN	CPU per request. Total CPU	1.61 mising		1.61 ms	la v -

Figure 7-55. Dynatrace easyTravel application transaction metrics

# Summary

In this chapter, we have provided an overview of Dynatrace and its capabilities, along with hands-on steps for using Dynatrace for container application monitoring. In the next chapter, we will provide overview of Sysdig and look at its capabilities for monitoring Container ecosystem. We will also provide hands-on steps for using Sysdig for container application monitoring.

## **CHAPTER 8**

# Container Application Monitoring Using Sysdig

This chapter will provide hands-on steps for doing container application monitoring using Sysdig. We will look at the following:

- Introduction to Sysdig
- Container Application Monitoring
- Working with Sysdig for Container Application Monitoring

# **Introduction to Sysdig**

Sysdig Monitor is a powerful container-native monitoring and troubleshooting solution that provides comprehensive observability. It comes out of the box with unmatched container visibility and deep orchestrator integrations, including Kubernetes, Docker Swarm, AWS

235

EKS, Azure AKS, and Google GKE. It is available as both a cloud and an on-premises software offering. The following are the key features of Sysdig Monitor:

- Simplifies discovery and metric collection: Sysdig provides transparent instrumentation that dynamically discovers applications, containers, hosts, networks, and custom metrics, like Prometheus, JMX, and statsD, for deep insight into complex environments.
- Visualizes service reliability: Sysdig provides a consolidated overview of your service performance, capacity, and risk profile, which helps developers and DevOps quickly identify application issues and take action.
- Monitors infrastructure and applications: By leveraging deep integrations with Kubernetes, OpenShift, Docker, Mesos, DC/OS, AWS, Google, IBM, Azure, etc., Sysdig lets you see beyond infrastructure into how your apps and services are performing.
- **Builds robust dashboards:** Sysdig provides out-ofthe-box and customizable dashboards that enable at-a-glance views of your infrastructure, applications, compliance, and metrics and let you visualize your environment the way you want.
- Simplifies and scales Prometheus monitoring: Using turn-key, horizontal scalability, enterprise access control and security, Prometheus metrics correlation, and PromQL queries with any event or metric, Sysdig helps you keep pace with large, complex environments.

- Allows you to explore your entire infrastructure: Sysdig provides automatic correlation of data from across your infrastructure, including custom metrics from statsD, JMX, and Prometheus, providing deep insight into complex environments.
- **Proactively alert for faster response:** Sysdig provides configurable alerts to enable proactive notification of any condition, including events, downtime, and anomalies, to help you get a handle on issues before they impact operations.
- Accelerates troubleshooting: Sysdig provides deep container visibility, service-oriented views, and comprehensive metrics that help you hunt threats and eliminate issues faster.

Sysdig's functional architecture is shown in Figure 8-1.

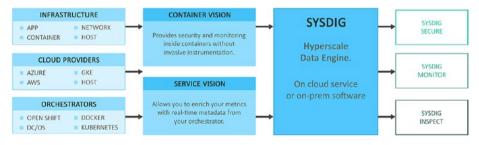


Figure 8-1. Sysdig functional architecture

# **Container Application Monitoring**

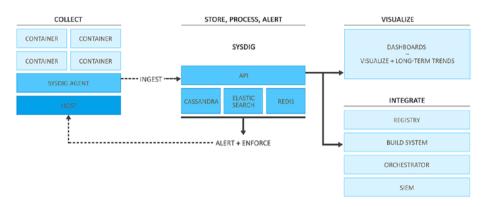
Sysdig's commercial offering unifies all operational data and turns it into insights. Starting with thousands of metrics and events for every application, container, and host, the Sysdig platform enriches the data to

give you precise, in-context views of your applications and microservices. Sysdig then provides you with apps that deliver key visualizations to help you achieve your specific workflows.

Sysdig gets its data from the kernel by subscribing to trace-points that many system kernels are already processing and publishing; this is called Container Vision. This makes the data capture a very lightweight exercise (typically 1–3% CPU resource and 500 MB system memory). Sysdig is based on the open source Linux troubleshooting and forensics project by the same name (Sysdig). The open source project allows you to see every single system call, down to process, arguments, payload, and connection, on a single host. This data is dynamically mapped to containers, microservices, clouds, and orchestrators in a way that is at once powerful and simple to use.

To further leverage the unique visibility created by the original Sysdig project, the developers built an open source security tool called Falco . Falco combines the visibility of open source Sysdig with a rules engine that constantly monitors system events for violations of policies at runtime. The Sysdig enterprise offering then allows for enforcement of these policies, compliance, and auditing on top of this rich data.

To further enrich the data used to secure your environment, Sysdig has also integrated Anchore into the platform. What Falco does for runtime, Anchore does for build-time: it allows you to implement and enforce vulnerability management policies and scan your container images before they ever go into production. Please refer to Figure 8-2 for the Sysdig container monitoring system architecture components.



#### Figure 8-2. Sysdig container monitoring architecture

Sysdig's architecture is very similar to those of tcpdump and Wireshark, as events are first captured at the kernel level by a small driver called sysdig-probe, which leverages a kernel facility called tracepoints.

Sysdig also now supports eBPF, shown in Figure 8-3, as an alternative to the kernel module-based architecture just described. eBPF—extended Berkeley Packet Filter—is a Linux-native in-kernel virtual machine that enables secure, low-overhead tracing for application performance and event observability and analysis.

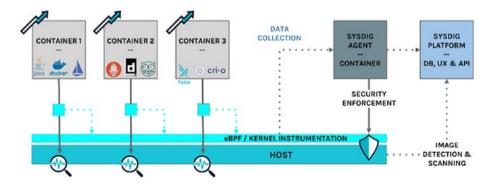


Figure 8-3. Sysdig container monitoring architecture

# Sysdig Trial License Setup

Now, let's request the evaluation version of Sysdig Monitor and see how it monitors container applications.

**Step 1:** Navigate to https://sysdig.com/ and request the evaluation version of Sysdig. Select Products and click on the Sign-up Today button, as shown in Figure 8-4.



Figure 8-4. Sysdig evaluation request

Step 2: Fill in the required details and click the Submit button.
Step 3: You will receive an activation link at the email address you provided. It takes roughly thirty minutes to one hour to receive the email.
Click on the activation link in the email to complete your evaluation access request. You will be prompted to set up a new password for Sysdig. Click the Activate and Login button to proceed, as shown in Figure 8-5.

<b>Sysdig</b> Monito
prashantium@htl.com
Enter new password
Confirm new password
Activate and login
Already registered* Login

Figure 8-5. Sysdig evaluation account password setup

**Step 4:** On the next screen, you will be prompted to go to the Sysdig Welcome screen. Click on Next to proceed.

**Step 5:** We are using Sysdig to monitor our Kubernetes cluster, so please select "Kubernetes | GKE | OpenShift" on the next screen. On selection, you will view a key, as shown in Figure 8-6. Copy the key. We will use this later in the chapter.



Figure 8-6. Sysdig evaluation account Kubernetes integration key

Now, we will set up a cluster on AWS using Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Services (EKS), and then integrate Sysdig Monitor for container application monitoring. We will assume the reader has knowledge of working with AWS and has an AWS account.

## **Elastic Kubernetes Service Setup on AWS**

Please perform the following steps to set up the Elastic Kubernetes Services on AWS.

**Step 1:** Log in to your AWS account and navigate to IAM to create the IAM role for the AWS EKS service, as shown in Figure 8-7.

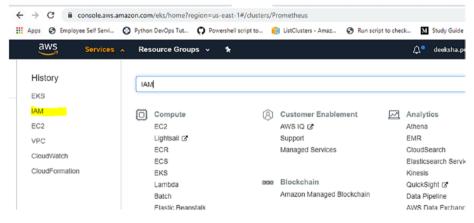
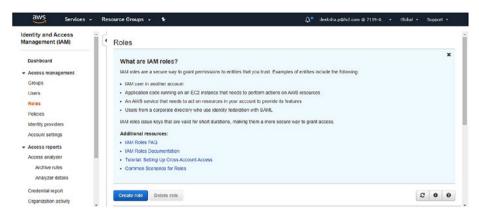


Figure 8-7. AWS EKS IAM role creation

**Step 2:** Select "Roles" and click on the Create Role button, as shown in Figure 8-8.



#### Figure 8-8. AWS EKS IAM role creation

**Step 3:** Select "AWS EKS Service" from the services list and select the use case of EKS for managing the cluster on the user's behalf. Provide role name and description. Click the Next: Permissions button, as shown in Figure 8-9.

Application Discovery	Data Pipeline	Global Accelerator	OpsWorks	Storage Gateway
Service	DataSync	Glue	Personalize	Textract
Batch	DeepLens	Greengrass	QLDB	Transfer
Chime	Directory Service	GuardDuty	RAM	Trusted Advisor
CloudFormation	DynamoDB	Inspector	RDS	VPC
CloudHSM	EC2	IOT	Redshift	WorkLink
CloudTrail	EC2 - Fleet	IoT Things Graph	Rekognition	WorkMail
CloudWatch Application Insights	EC2 Auto Scaling	KMS	RoboMaker	
CloudWatch Events				
Select your use ca	ase			
EKS Allows EKS to manage clust	sters on your behalf.			
EKS - Nodegroup Allow EKS to manage node	groups on your behalf.			

Figure 8-9. AWS EKS IAM role creation

**Step 4:** Add the policies listed in Figure 8-10 and add tags (optional). Click on the Next: Review button.

	ach policies		O Add inline policy
	Policy name 👻	Policy type 👻	
•	G AmazonEKSClusterPolicy	AWS managed policy	×
	CloudWatchAgentAdminPolicy	AWS managed policy	×
•	CloudWatchAgentServerPolicy	AWS managed policy	×
	AmazonEKSServicePolicy	AWS managed policy	×

Figure 8-10. AWS EKS IAM role creation

**Step 5:** Review and click the Create Role button, as shown in Figure 8-11. Review after the role has been created.



Figure 8-11. AWS EKS IAM role creation

**Step 6:** Now, let's create a security group for our AWS EKS cluster. Select "EC2" from the AWS service list and navigate to Security Groups, as shown in Figure 8-12.

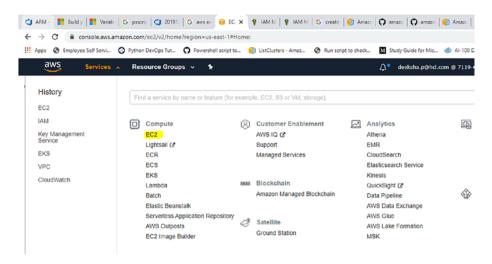


Figure 8-12. AWS EKS security group creation

**Step 7:** Click on Create Security Group. Provide a name for the security group and add a description (optional). Select a pre-built VPC. Click on the Create button to set up a security group for the AWS EKS cluster, as shown in Figure 8-13.

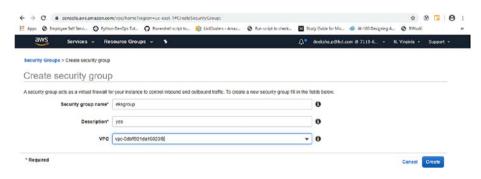


Figure 8-13. AWS EKS security group creation

**Step 8:** Now add inbound and outbound security group ports to your \ cluster. Typically, users follow organizational policies, AWS architecture, and security best practices to allow selective ports for their AWS EKS cluster. For this lab exercise, we are adding a few default ports, as shown in Figure 8-14.

ecurity Group: sg-0b28ea220f42e8ca3				- 0 0 û.		
Description	Inbound	Outbound	Tags			
Edit						
Туре 🕕		Proto	() Ioo	Port Range (i)	Source (j)	Description ()
All TCP		TCP		0 - 65535	0.0.0.0/0	
HTTPS		TCP		443	0.0.0.0/0	
HTTPS		TCP		443	::/0	

Figure 8-14. AWS EKS security group inbound port

**Step 9:** Now, let's create an SSH key pair for the AWS EKS cluster. Select "EC2" from the service list and navigate to Key Pairs, as shown in Figure 8-15.

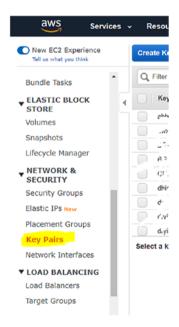


Figure 8-15. AWS EKS SSH key pair creation

**Step 10:** Click on Create Key Pair. Provide key pair name and click the Create button, as shown in Figure 8-16.

41	Create Key Pair	2022 0 00 0 1 E0 1 00 00 0	×
	Key pair name:	provideyourkeynamehere	
		Cancel	

Figure 8-16. AWS EKS SSH key pair creation

**Step 11:** Now, let's create the AWS EKS cluster. Select "EKS" from the services list. Click the Create Cluster button, as shown in Figure 8-17.



Figure 8-17. AWS EKS creation

Provide a cluster name and select Kubernetes version 1.14. Select the IAM role created in previous steps, as shown in Figure 8-18.

eate cluster	
seneral configuration	
luster name nter a unique name for your Amazon EKS cluster.	
Prometheus	
ubernetes version elect the Kubernetes version to install.	
1.14	•
tole name 🖸 Info elect the IAM Role that will be used by the nodes.	
EKS-Cluster-1-eks-cluster-role	v.

Figure 8-18. AWS EKS creation

**Step 12:** Select the pre-built VPC and subnet, as shown in Figure 8-19.

$\leftrightarrow$		nsole.aws.amazon.com/eks/home?r			Second States		
the control		Python DevOps Tut  Power	shell script to 🧃	ListClusters - Amaz 🔇 Run	script to check M Stu	idy Guide for M	ic 🙆 Al-100 Designing A
	aws	Services - Resource Grou	ps v 🛧			<b>∆°</b> ₫	eeksha.p@hcl.com @ 7119-6.
=	Netwo	rking Info					
	VPC	PC to use for your EKS Cluster resources.					
	vpc-0b	83f49c43af45cab - 10.3.0.0/16				Ψ.	
	Subnets Choose th	2 e subnets in your VPC where your worker					
	٩	Find subnet					
		Subnet 🗸	Name 🛛 🗸	Availability Zone 🛛	Subnet IPv4 CIDR	▽	
		subnet-07870f325386e2fc1	edge-1	us-east-1a	10.3.3.0/24		
		subnet-05c41dfb4b88cbcc0	DMZ-2	us-east-1b	10.3.6.0/24		
		subnet-0e12b63089b3be981	backend-2	us-east-1b	10.3.2.0/24		
		subnet-0cb4d4956cc9914cb	edge-2	us-east-1b	10.3.4.0/24		
		subnet-03f88d11552099f41	backend-1	us-east-1a	10.3.1.0/24		
		subnet-0ad6c493a86237de4	DMZ-1	us-east-1a	10.3.5.0/24		

Figure 8-19. AWS EKS creation

Select the security group created in a previous step, as shown in Figure 8-20.

	sg- 09b9048398e960e20	launch-wizard-5	launch-wizard-5 created 2019- 03T20:38:29.140+05:30
•	sg- 0b28ea220f42e8ca3	eksgroup	yes
			Security group for Kubernetes I
		k8s-olh-	a0446ba29129411aa847b0a25

Figure 8-20. AWS EKS creation

Step 13: Enable public access for AWS EKS APIs, as shown in Figure 8-21.



### Figure 8-21. AWS EKS creation

Also enable all logging options, as shown in Figure 8-22.



Figure 8-22. AWS EKS creation

**Step 14:** Add tag values (optional) and click the Create button, as shown in Figure 8-23.

Amazon Container X Services	Authensicator Leap entiting to authentication requests into the cluster Disabled Disabled
Amazon ECS Clusters Task definitions	Controller manager Logs pertaining to state of cluster controllers. Disabled Scheduler Logs pertaining to scheduling decisions
Amazon EKS Clusters	Disabled Tags
Amazon ECR Repositories	A top is a label that you andper to an AWS resource. Each tag consists of a key and an optional value. You can use tags to search and filter your resources. Tops are optional. This cluster does not have any tags           Add tag         Remaining tags available to add: 50
	Cancel Create

Figure 8-23. AWS EKS creation

**Step 15:** Validate your EKS cluster after setup. You can view if status is ACTIVE on the AWS console, as shown in Figure 8-24.

Amazon Container X Services	BKS > Clusters > Promethious					
Amazon ECS Clusters	Prometheous C Update cluster version					
Task definitions	General configuration					
Amazon EKS Clusters	Kubernetes version Platform version 1,14 eks.5	Status ⊘ ∧CTIVE				
	API server endpoint	Certificate authority				
Amazon ECR Repositories	https://5A08454A0333A0791FC87232763CF6F6.gr7.us-east- 1.eks.amazonaws.com	LSOILSTCRUdJTiBDRVJUSUZJQOFURSOILSOICK1JSUNSRENDOW JD20F3SUJ820(CQURBTILina3Foa2)H0XcwQkFRc02BREFWTVJN d0VRWURWUVFERXdwcmRXSmwKY201bGRHVnpN0JRYRFRFNU				
	OpenID Connect provider URL					
	https://oidc.eks.us-east- 1.amazonaws.com/id/SA08454A0333A0791FC87232763CF6F6					
	Cluster ARN	Cluster IAM Role ARN				

Figure 8-24. AWS EKS creation validation

**Step 16:** Now, let's create a node group in the AWS EKS cluster. Click the Add Node Group button on the newly created AWS EKS cluster's page, as shown in Figure 8-25.

			new			
Node Groups (0) Info			Edit	Delete	Add node gro	bup
Group name	Desired size	▽	Kubernetes version	Ā	Status	,
	No	managed no	de groups			
	This cluster does	not have any	r managed node groups.			
Nod	es that are not part of an Amazon B	KS managed	node group are not shown in the	AWS console.		

Figure 8-25. AWS EKS node group creation

Provide the name of the node group, then select subnets and the IAM role created in previous steps. Click the Next button.

**Step 17:** Select "Amazon Linux 2" for AMI type, select instance type as "t3.xlarge," and set the disk size to "20," as shown in Figure 8-26.

Amazon Container × Services	EKS > Clusters > Prometheus > Add node group					
Amazon ECS	Step 1 Configure node group Set compute configuration					
Clusters Task definitions	Step 2 Set compute configuration	Node compute configuration These properties cannot be changed effort the node group is areated.				
Amazon EKS	Step 3	AMI type Info Select the EKS-spelmized Amazon Machine Image for nodes				
Clusters	Set scaling configuration	Amazon Linux 2 (AL2_x86_64)				
Amazon ECR	Step 4	Instance type Info Select the EC2 instance type for nodes				
Repositories	Review and create	t3.xlarge 💌				
		Disk size Select the size of the attached EBS volume for each node 20 GB				
		Cancel Previous Next				

Figure 8-26. AWS EKS node group creation

**Step 18:** Select the SSH key pair created in previous steps. Select "Allow remote access from All." Click the Next button.

**Step 19:** Provide cluster scaling configuration of minimum, maximum, and desired size as 1. Click the Next button, as shown in Figure 8-27.

Services		theous > Add node group
Amazon ECS	Step 1 Configure node group	Set scaling configuration
Clusters Task definitions	Step 2 Set compute configuration	Group size
Amazon EKS Clusters	Step 3 Set scaling configuration	Minimum S28 Set the minimum number of nodes that the group can scale in to 1 Nodes
Amazon ECR Repositories	Step 4 Review and create	Maximum size Set the maximum number of nodes that the group can scale out to           1         Nodes           Desired size         Desired size
		Set the device number of nodes that the group should launch with initially           1         Nodes

Figure 8-27. AWS EKS node group creation

**Step 20:** Review and click the Create button as shown in Figure 8-28. After creation, you can view whether the node group is in an active state on the AWS EKS cluster home page, as shown in Figure 8-24.

Amazon Container Services	×	Step 2: Set compute configurat	ion		Ed
		Node compute configuratio	n		
Amazon ECS Clusters Task definitions		AMI type Amazon Linux 2 (AL2_x86_64)			
Amazon EKS Clusters		Instance type t3.micro		Disk size 15	
Amazon ECR		Step 3: Set scaling configuratio	n		Edi
Repositories		Group size			
		Minimum size 1	Maximum size 1	Desired size	
				Cancel Previous	Create

Figure 8-28. AWS EKS node group creation

**Step 21:** Now we will set up the AWS cli tool on our Kubernetes master node server. Execute the following command to install Python36 on your system:

\$sudo yum install python36

**Step 22:** Verify the Python version by executing the following command:

```
$Python3 -version
```

Step 23: Install AWS cli by executing the following command:

```
$Pip3 install awscli -upgrade -user
```

Step 24: Verify AWS cli version by executing the following command:

\$aws --version

**Step 25:** Configure your AWS account credentials (access and secret key) by executing the following command. Add the secret key, access key, and region where the AWS EKS cluster was created. Select "json" as the output format, as shown in Figure 8-29.

\$aws configure

### Figure 8-29. AWS cli tool configuration

**Step 26:** Execute the following command to fetch the AWS EKS cluster kubeconfig details (which we created in a previous step) from our master Kubernetes node:

\$aws eks --region "us-east-1" update-kubeconfig --name "Prometheus"

**Step 27:** Fetch the kernel details of the AWS EKS cluster by executing the following command, as shown in Figure 8-30:

\$kubectl describe nodes

pods: System Info:	58
Machine ID:	ec2e9243dde353f5e947ac1cdff26ad0
System UUID:	EC2E9243-DDE3-53F5-E947-AC1CDFF26AD0
Kernel Version:	4.14.146-119.123.amzn2.x86_64
OS Image:	Amazon Linux 2
Operating System:	linux
Architecture:	amd64

Figure 8-30. AWS EKS cluster kernel version

# **Sysdig Agent Installation**

So far we have created an evaluation account for Sysdig, created an AWS EKS cluster, and connected our Kubernetes master node with AWS EKS. Now, we will install a Sysdig agent on the AWS EKS cluster.

**Step 1:** Execute the following command to download and install dependencies for the Sysdig agent:

```
$yum -y install kernel-devel-$(uname -r)
```

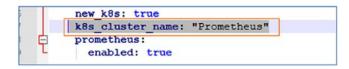
**Step 2:** Navigate to the /home/Prometheus directory and execute the following command to clone the file from GitHub:

```
$cd /home/promethues
$ git clone https://github.com/dryice-devops/sysdig.git
```

**Step 3:** Under the cloned Sysdig directory, you will find sysdig-agentclusterrole.yaml, sysdig-agent-configmap.yaml, and sysdig-agentdaemonset-v2.yaml files. You can get sample files from this GitHub link:

```
https://github.com/draios/sysdig-cloud-scripts/tree/master/
agent_deploy/kubernetes.
```

You don't need to modify anything in the sysdig-agent-clusterrole. yaml or sysdig-agent-daemonset-v2.yaml files. In the sysdig-agentconfigmap.yaml file, you need to update the k8s\_cluster\_name field with the name of the AWS EKS cluster (Prometheus, in our case). Also set Prometheus monitoring to true, as shown in Figure 8-31.



### Figure 8-31. Sysdig agent config files update

**Step 4:** Create a namespace for the Sysdig agent using the non-root user, as follows:

\$kubectl create ns sysdig-agent

**Step 5:** Create secrets for the Sysdig agent by executing the following command. This will use the key (highlighted) we got when we created the evaluation account for Sysdig (while selecting Kubernetes on the Welcome screen).

```
$kubectl create secret generic sysdig-agent --from-
literal=access-key=b7f77372-Of4e-444a-b13a-c3818fd5c885 -n
sysdig-agent
```

**Step 6:** Execute the following command to deploy the Sysdig agent cluster role. Here, the cluster role file is the same one we created in previous steps.

```
$ kubectl apply -f sysdig-agent-clusterrole.yaml -n sysdig-
agent
```

**Step 7:** Execute the following command to create a service account in the Sysdig agent namespace:

```
$ kubectl create serviceaccount sysdig-agent -n sysdig-agent
```

**Step 8:** Execute the following command to create cluster role binding in the Sysdig namespace:

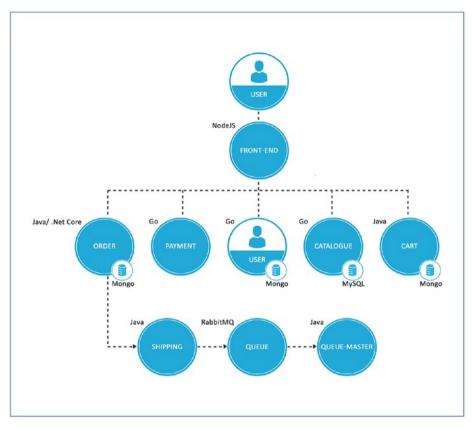
```
$ kubectl create clusterrolebinding sysdig-agent --clusterrole=
sysdig-agent --serviceaccount=sysdig-agent:sysdig-agent
```

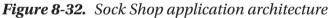
**Step 9:** Execute the following commands to complete installation of the Sysdig agent:

\$ kubectl apply -f sysdig-agent-configmap.yaml -n sysdig-agent \$kubectl apply -f sysdig-agent-daemonset-v2.yaml -n sysdigagent

# **Deploy Sock Shop Application on EKS**

Before starting to use Sysdig, let's deploy an application on our AWS EKS cluster. We will use the Sock Shop application in this example. The application is the user-facing part of an online shop that sells socks. It is intended to aid the demonstration and testing of microservice and cloudnative technologies. We will use this application to demonstrate Sysdig's container application monitoring capability. Figure 8-32 shows the architecture of the application.





**Step 1:** Execute the following command to download the Sock Shop application's yaml file to the /home/prometheus/sysdig directory. This file contains the configuration information related to Kubernetes deployments, pods, Docker images, and services required to deploy the Sock Shop application on the AWS EKS cluster.

\$ git clone https://github.com/dryice-devops/microservicesdemo.git

**Step 2:** Execute the following command to deploy the application to the /home/prometheus/sysdig/microservices-demo/deploy/Kubernetes directory:

```
$ kubectl create namespace sock-shop
```

Step 3: Execute the following inline command to deploy the application:

```
$ kubectl apply -f complete-demo.yaml
```

**Step 4:** Execute the following inline command to validate the deployed application. You can view all pods that are part of the Sock Shop application, as shown in Figure 8-33.

\$kubectl get pods -n sock-shop

[saurabht@dryicelabs.com@devop:	s0087 kul	pernetes]\$	kubect1 get	pods -n sock-shop
NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
carts-668ff7f449-wbxc6	1/1	Running	0	112s
carts-db-d6475f9b8-sdj2t	1/1	Running	0	113s
catalogue-6fbf7d5588-5vmfw	1/1	Running	0	109s
catalogue-db-bdf476f4c-cjmwh	1/1	Running	0	110s
front-end-6fd4d97c75-dgd88	1/1	Running	0	107s
orders-78f5667b66-78vxn	1/1	Running	0	105s
orders-db-fb97f74c8-s9t4v	1/1	Running	0	106s
payment-7b968b8688-tt9h9	1/1	Running	0	103s
queue-master-6494b9f944-gc7wg	1/1	Running	0	102s
rabbitmq-774977d74-9w6dj	1/1	Running	0	101s
shipping-5bd79d96dd-1jpcx	1/1	Running	0	99s
user-6dbd855f5-g8kx5	1/1	Running	0	97s
user-db-78b67dfd4c-q8d6p	1/1	Running	0	98s
[saurahht@drvicelahs_com@devon	\$0087 kuł	nernetesÌ\$	•	

Figure 8-33. Sock Shop application deployment validation

### **EKS Metrics on Sysdig**

Now we will navigate to the Sysdig console for reviewing monitoring metrics.

**Step 1:** Navigate to https://sysdig.com/ and click the Login button, then select "Monitor." Log in using the username/password used at the registration stage.

**Step 2:** After login, you will view the Welcome to Sysdig page. You will also see a "You have 1 agent connected" notification. Click on Next to navigate to the next screen, as shown in Figure 8-34.

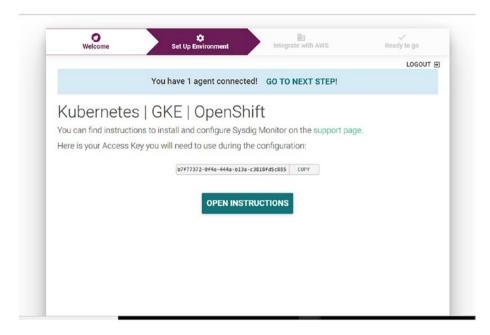


Figure 8-34. Sysdig welcome page

**Step 3:** Add the AWS access and secret key on the screen. Enable Cloudwatch and click the Next button. You will see the "setup complete" message on the screen, as shown in Figure 8-35.

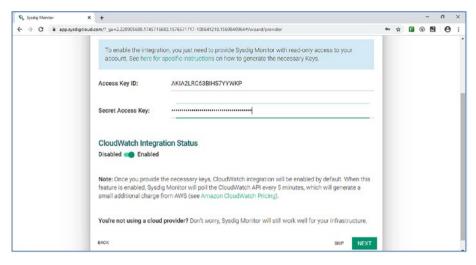


Figure 8-35. Sysdig adding AWS account

# **Sysdig Navigation**

Now, let's navigate across various reports on the Sysdig console useful for container monitoring.

**Step 1:** To view the deployed pods in Sysdig, click Explore. Select "Hosts & Containers" from the drop-down menu. On the other node, select "Kubernetes Health Overview" under the Kubernetes category (subcategory of Default Dashboards), as shown in Figure 8-36.

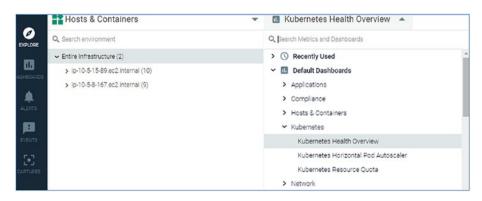


Figure 8-36. Sysdig Kubernetes health dashboard

**Step 2:** You will view rich metrics regarding the entire Kubernetes environment, including top namespace (by container), CPU/memory/file system usage, and network in/out, as shown in Figure 8-37.

cope: Entire Infrastructure		
0 02 PM	200 ms 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	0 02 PM 023
Top Deployments (container count)	Top Namespaces (container count)	Pod Container Restarts by Deployment
	- sock-shop - kupe-system - sysdig-agent 4 0 5 10	10 0 02 PM 023
0 1 2 3	4 0 0	Ver III Ver

Figure 8-37. Sysdig Kubernetes health dashboard

**Step 3:** Select "Container Limits" from the right-side drop-down (Figure 8-38) to view CPU/memory share and quotas.

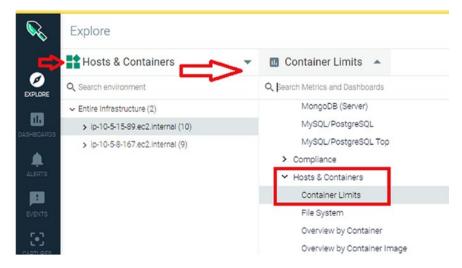


Figure 8-38. Sysdig container limit monitoring

**Step 4:** Select "File system" from the right-side drop-down to view the number of bytes free/bytes used, number of nodes in the file system, etc., as shown in Figure 8-39.

File System	-					
Scope: Entire Infrastruc	ture					
File Custom						
File System						
fs.mountDir	fs.device	fs.type	fs.bytes.to	fs.bytes.u	fs.bytes.fr	fs.used.pe

Figure 8-39. Sysdig container file system monitoring

**Step 5:** Select the "Overview" option under Network from the rightside drop-down to view metrics like inbound network bytes, outbound network bytes, and total network bytes, as shown in Figure 8-40.



Figure 8-40. Sysdig container network monitoring

### **Docker Container Metrics**

Sysdig provides various useful container metrics in the form of graphs. This information is useful for the sysadmin to monitor the health of the container ecosystem and take an appropriate action; e.g., generating an alert if any container is consuming more memory or CPU utilization. In this section, you will learn how to visualize and analyze the container metrics provided by Sysdig.

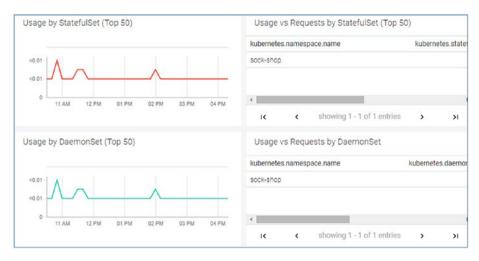
Now, let's view container application metrics.

**Step 1:** To view container-based information for the Sock Shop application (deployed in previous steps), select "Containerized Apps" from the drop-down and then select container names, starting with weaveworksdemos. You will view top pods CPU utilization, memory usage, and filesystem, as shown in Figure 8-41.



Figure 8-41. Sysdig containerized application view

**Step 2:** To view deployments, select "Deployments" from the dropdown menu and select "Sock-Shop." Select "Kubernetes CPU Allocation Optimization" under the Kubernetes category, as shown in Figure 8-42.



### Figure 8-42. Sysdig Deployment view

### **Application Performance Metrics in Sysdig**

Sysdig also provides various useful metrics related to application performance monitoring; e.g., response time, latency, request, and error count. System administrators use this information to identify and rectify issues that might be the cause of application failure.

Now, let's explore other metrics provided by Sysdig specific for the application layer.

**Step 1:** Select "Explore" in the left-hand side panel and choose the "Hosts & Containers" option from the drop-down menu. Select "HTTP" from the second drop-down menu on the right. You will view metrics like top HTTP request, average/maximum request time, slowest URLs, etc., as shown in Figure 8-43.

Scope: Entire Infrastructure			
Request Count Enlarge to see content	HTTP Error Count Enlarge to see content	Average Request Ti Enlarge to see content	Max Request Tin Enlarge to see content
Number of Requests (	Over Time	Average and Max Reque	st Time
5/s 0 11:43	:30	2 ms 0 11:43	:30
	(D	Slowest URLs	
Top URLs by Number	of Requests	SIGWEST CITES	
Top URLs by Number	of Requests		

### Figure 8-43. Sysdig HTTP monitor

**Step 2:** To analyze the JVM (Java virtual machine) health—e.g., heap size and garbage collector account—Sysdig provides insights. To see the JVM-related metrics, please select "JVM." This will show metrics like allocated heap memory usage by process over time and garbage collector collection time, as shown in Figure 8-44.

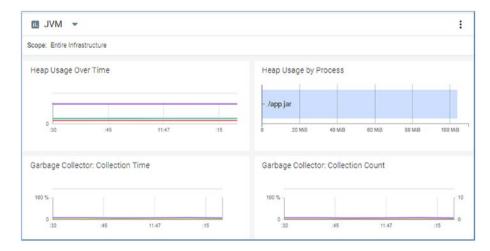


Figure 8-44. Sysdig JVM monitor

# Sysdig Topology View

The Sysdig Topology view provides an interactive, animated interface to visualize how different components in your system interact with each other in real time. The interface by default renders a selected host's top processes and their interactions with processes on remote hosts or host groups. The following are the entities visible on the Sysdig console:

**Nodes:** The entities participating in network communication. A node could be a process, a container, a host, or any label identified by the Sysdig agent. For example, kubernetes.pod.name.

Links: The network connection between nodes.

- Hosts and their child processes (host.hostName

   proc.name) serve as the default grouping for the
   Topology view. Scaling a Topology view is limited
   by the number of processes and connections.
   Sysdig Monitor creates the Topology view by
   identifying network endpoints (IP addresses)
   derived from system call data.
- The Topology view in the Explore tab provides pre-defined dashboards to represent CPU usage, network traffic, and response time metrics.

Now, let's view the Topology view from Sysdig.

**Step 1:** Select "Explore" in the left-hand side panel and choose the "Hosts & Containers" option from the drop-down menu. Select "Topology" and then "CPU Usage." Click on each icon to drill down to CPU usage by application node; a container with topology mapping is shown in Figure 8-45.

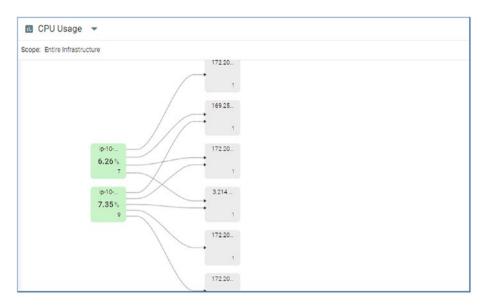


Figure 8-45. Sysdig Topology view by CPU

**Step 2:** Select the "Network Traffic" option from the second dropdown menu instead of CPU usage. You can drill down to view the specific flow; e.g., we selected the Python-based box that shows the network traffic between the Python pod and Mongo DB pod related to our Sock Shop app, as shown in Figure 8-46.



Figure 8-46. Sysdig Topology view by network traffic

# **Golden Signal Monitoring Using Sysdig**

Classic monitoring tools are usually based on static configuration files and were designed to monitor machines, not microservices or containers. Containers are created and destroyed at an incredible pace, and it is impossible to catch up without specific service discovery functions.

It is important that we are able to focus on relevant views and alerts and not generate data that is of no use for analysis or troubleshooting.

Google resolved this issue using Golden Signals (term used in Google SRE handbook). Golden Signals are four metrics that will give you a very good idea of the real health and performance of your application as seen by the actors interacting with that service, whether they are final users or another service in your microservice application. The four Golden Signals are as follows:

> **Latency:** Latency is the time your system takes to serve a request against the service. This is an important sign to detect a performance degradation problem.

**Errors:** The rate of errors returned by your service is a very good indicator of deeper issues. It is very important to detect not only explicit errors, but implicit errors too.

**Traffic/Connections:** Traffic or connections is an indicator of the amount of use of your service per time unit. It can be many different values depending on the nature of the system, like the number of requests to an API or the bandwidth consumed by a streaming app.

**Saturation:** Usually saturation is expressed as a percentage of the maximum capacity, but each system will have different ways to measure saturation. The percentage could mean the number of users or requests obtained directly from the application or based upon estimations.

Now, let's see how we can view Golden Signal metrics using Sysdig. **Step 1:** Select "Explore" in the left-hand side panel and choose the "Services" option from the drop-down menu. Select "Kubernetes Service Golden Signals" from the second drop-down menu, on the right. You'll see the Golden Signals metrics, as shown in Figure 8-47.

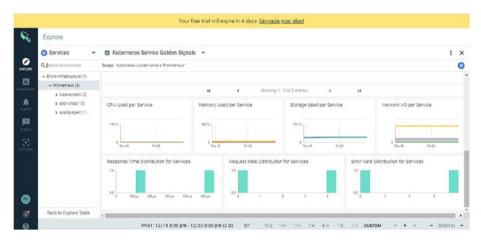


Figure 8-47. Sysdig Golden Signals metrics

# Summary

In this chapter, we have provided hands-on steps for using Sysdig for container application monitoring. In the next chapter, we will cover how to automate enabling container monitoring using CI/CD-based automated pipelines, along with hands-on exercises.

# **CHAPTER 9**

# Automation and Orchestration of Container Monitoring

This chapter will provide hands-on steps for using Infrastructure as Code and the CI/CD pipeline to automate the deployment of container ecosystem infrastructure, applications, and monitoring. We will look at the following:

- Container Monitoring Automation
- Hands-on Exercise for Container Monitoring Automation

# **Container Monitoring Automation**

As infrastructure has evolved and matured over the last decade, the way in which we build and deploy that infrastructure has also changed. With the rise of Infrastructure as Code, we can now reconstruct the whole infrastructure and platform from a code repository. With cloud computing and APIs, we can now truly treat our infrastructure just like an application. With containerization, since the dependencies are packaged with the application, the application can now be ported to any infrastructure, which itself is spun up using Infrastructure as Code.

A great advantage of Infrastructure as Code (IaC) is that it allows you to build environments rapidly without any human intervention. With IaC, we can now have consistent configuration and builds that are exactly alike.

The following is a high-level view of how IaC tools operate (Figure 9-1):

- You describe the desired infrastructure resources in a file (for example, a virtual network with three public subnets, a compute instance on one of them with a block volume attached to it). You describe what you need; you never describe how to create them—the IaC tool figures out how to create them.
- The tool looks at what you have described in your code and logs in to your cloud account to check if those resources are present.
- If the resources are not present, they are created.
- If the resources are already present with the same attributes, no action is taken.
- If matching resources are found with differences, the IaC tool assumes you want them changed and makes the change happen.

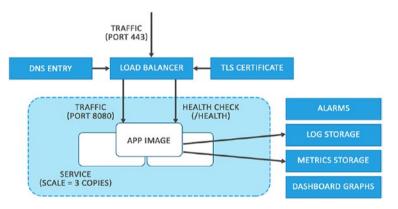


Figure 9-1. How Infrastructure as Code works

As DevOps continues to evolve, developers find ways to strengthen the integration of IaC and containers, since they complement each other. Containers incorporate Infrastructure as Code into the development cycle as a core component.

At first glance, a container image appears to be a fully self-contained application: it has all of the code and software dependencies required to run the application. However, once we deploy and operate images in the container ecosystem, we find we need a lot more configuration to scale it out, make it reliable, and make it observable. The monitoring and management of container-based infrastructure and applications brings its own unique elements and complexity.

A containerized application in the cloud might look something like Figure 9-2, where the container image is only part of the full application.



### Figure 9-2. Containerized application components beyond image

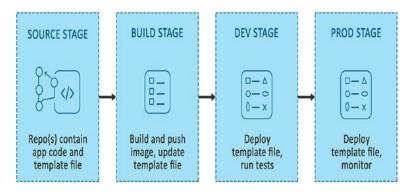
The complete application is really best described with a combination of the container image and an IaC template containing all this configuration. Infrastructure as Code is an important element in release management of an application.

Now, when it comes to automating the container monitoring, there are many use cases possible. Some of the use cases are listed here:

• Enabling container monitoring for base infrastructure and application via CI/CD pipeline and Infrastructure as Code solutions (like Jenkins and Terraform/Ansible). This can include use cases like installing any agent/plugin for Monitoring, creating alarms, configuring threshold etc.

- Self-healing incidents which are created after receiving monitoring alerts using the Runbook orchestration tool. Essentially all the steps that a human performs to troubleshoot and resolve an incident after receiving a monitoring alert are converted into an automated flow, which is automatically triggered to resolve the incident.
- Report generation automation using tools like Grafana or Splunk

When we deploy Infrastructure as Code in a CI/CD pipeline, we can deploy changes in both the microservices infrastructure and the containers in the CI/CD release pipeline. This enables complete visibility of both the application code and the infrastructure code in the pipeline currently deployed in the production environment. A simplified example of our release process is shown in Figure 9-3.



*Figure 9-3.* CI/CD pipeline leveraging Infrastructure as Code to automate container monitoring

The IaC template contains both the container-related configuration and the microservice's infrastructure in the "build" stage of the pipeline. The container image is built and pushed, and the unique ID for the new container image is inserted into the IaC template. Each stage of the pipeline, like "Dev" and "Prod," then deploys the same Infrastructure as Code template. This practice gives us confidence that deployments of the entire application are repeatable. Within this pipeline, we can enable automation to deploy container monitoring as part of a first-time release. In the next section, we will do a hands-on exercise to enable such automation using Terraform and Jenkins.

# Hands-on Exercise for Container Monitoring Automation

In this section, we will use Terraform to create a Kubernetes cluster on AWS and configure the Sysdig agent on it, and Jenkins to automate container monitoring. We will use AWS for our target container ecosystem and Sysdig for our container monitoring tool.

# **Cleaning Up the AWS Environment Namespace**

Before we begin, let's clean up the namespace created for the Sysdig agent and Sock Shop application from Chapter 8 for a fresh installation through automation by Jenkins and Terraform.

**Step 1:** Delete the sock-shop and sysdig-agent namespaces that we created earlier on the master node by executing the following command, as shown in Figure 9-4:

- \$ kubectl delete namespace sock-shop
- \$ kubectl delete namespace sysdig-agent

```
[saurabht@dryicelabs.com@devops0087 ~]# kubectl delete namespace sock-shop
namespace "sock-shop" deleted
```

```
[saurabht@dryicelabs.com@devops0087 ~]# kubectl delete namespace sysdig-agent
amespace "sysdig-agent" deleted
```

Figure 9-4. Kubernetes namespace clean-up

# Jenkins Installation (v2.204.1)

We will start with installing Jenkins, which will be used to compose a CI/CD pipeline for our containerized application. We will use our master node (10.1.150.126) server to install Jenkins. We will use a Dockerized version of Jenkins in this exercise.

**Step 1:** Log into the master node as the root user and execute the following command to clone the Docker file that will be used to install Jenkins. Navigate into the jenkins directory by executing the following command, as shown in Figure 9-5:

\$ git clone https://github.com/dryice-devops/jenkins.git \$ cd Jenkins

[root@devops0087 prometheus]# cd jenkins/

### Figure 9-5. Jenkins installation directory creation

**Step 2:** Create another sub-directory named jenkins-data that will be used as the Jenkins home and that will contain all the required details of the Jenkins server—e.g., workspace, job, configuration details, etc.—by executing the following command, as shown in Figure 9-6:

\$ mkdir jenkins-data

**Step 3:** Create a Jenkins Docker image with the name jenkins by executing the following inline command, as shown in Figure 9-6, in the jenkins directory that contains the Docker file:

```
$ docker build -t jenkins.
```



### Figure 9-6. Jenkins Docker image build

**Step 4:** Verify whether the Jenkins Docker image was created by executing the following inline command, as shown in Figure 9-7.

If the Docker image was created successfully, then the following command will return "Repository" as Jenkins that we passed in as a tag (-t) in previous step.

\$docker images

[root@devops0087 jenkins]# docker images REPOSITORY TAG jenkins latest	IMAGE ID 004adce89f20	CREATED 16 seconds ago	SIZE 778MB
------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------	---------------------------	---------------

Figure 9-7. Verify Jenkins Docker image

**Step 5:** Execute the following command to install Jenkins on Docker, as shown in Figure 9-8:

```
$docker run -u root --rm -d -p 8080:8080 -v /home/prometheus/
jenkins/jenkins-data:/var/jenkins_home -v /var/run/docker.
sock:/var/run/docker.sock Jenkins
```

In the preceding command we used port 8080 on the master node to run Jenkins, so please make sure that this port is open on your Linux VM. You can also pass another port for the VM, but the Jenkins container port would be run on 8080 port only. For more information about the Docker run command, please refer to Docker's official page.<sup>1</sup>

```
(Troot8devops0087 jenkins/# docker run -u root --rm -d -p 8080:8080 -v /home/prometheus/jenkins/jenkins-data:/var/jenkins_home -v /var/run/docker.sock
:/Var/run/docker.sock jenkins
dacfa2865d6daCadb01f789be9b9a8dfb3328994300a33bf3eae39646e0d1411
[Troot8devops0687 jenkins] ▲
```

### Figure 9-8. Jenkins installation

**Step 6:** Execute the following command to verify that the Jenkins Docker container is running fine. Its status should come as up as shown in Figure 9-9.

If the Jenkins Docker container is having any issues, then its status would be Exited or Dead; in that case, you would have to check the Docker container logs to identify the root cause of the Docker container failure.<sup>1</sup>

### \$ docker ps

Lroot@devops008/ jenkinsj# docker ps CONTAINER ID IMAGE	COMMAND	CREATED	STATUS	PORTS
NAMES dacfa2869d6a jenkins	"/bin/tini /usr/l_"	2 minutes ago	Up 2 minutes	0.0.0.8080->8080/

Figure 9-9. Jenkins installation verification

https://docs.docker.com/engine/reference/commandline/docker

**Step 7:** Jenkins requires a secret password during login. Secret passwords are stored in the initialAdminPassword file in the secrets directory of the jenkins-data folder. To get it, please execute the following command, as shown in Figure 9-10:

\$ cat jenkins-data/secrets/initialAdminPassword

```
[root@devops0087 jenkins]# cat jenkins-data/secrets/initialAdminPassword
16b6fbb9f07449508202d1f18606ee41
[root@devops0087 jenkins]#
```

### Figure 9-10. Fetching Jenkins password

**Step 8:** Navigate to the following URL to access Jenkins. You will receive a prompt that will require the secret password. Use the secret password fetched in the previous step and click the Continue button, as shown in Figure 9-11.

URL: http://Master-Node-IP:8080; e.g., http://10.1.150.126:8080

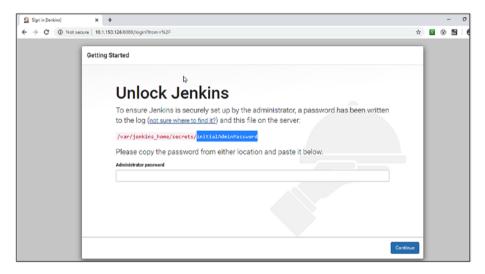


Figure 9-11. Accessing Jenkins console for first time

**Step 9:** Jenkins requires various plugins to create pipelines and to interact with different tools to perform tasks related to CI/CD; e.g., to connect with the GitHub repository and fetch the code, Jenkins required the Git plugin. Jenkins provides two options to install plugins: "Install suggested plugins" and "Select plugins to install." In our case, we selected "Install suggested plugins," as shown in Figure 9-12. If you want to select specific plugins, then choose "Select plugins to install."

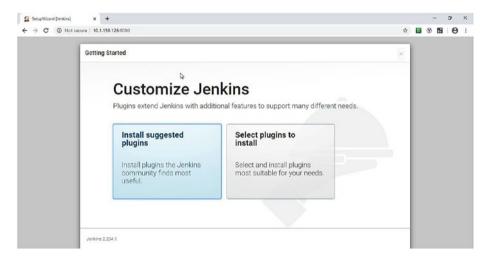


Figure 9-12. Selection of "Install suggested plugins" option

Step 10: Click on Continue to proceed, as shown in Figure 9-13.

<ul> <li>Pipeline</li> </ul>	✓ GitHub Branch Source Plugin	✓ Pipeline: GitHub Groovy Libraries	✓ Pipeline: Stage View
🗸 Git plugin	✓ Subversion	✓ SSH Slaves	<ul> <li>Matrix Authorization Strategy Plugin</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>PAM Authentication</li> </ul>	✓ LDAP	✓ Email Extension	✓ Mailer Plugin

Figure 9-13. Jenkins first-time login configuration

**Step 11:** Fill in details for username, password, full name, and email address and click the Save and Continue button, as shown in Figure 9-14.

Setting Started						
Userrame Deservant Password Full name E-mail eddress:	<u> </u>	t Adm	in User			

Figure 9-14. Jenkins first admin user setup

Step 12: Click on Save and Finish to proceed, as shown in Figure 9-15.

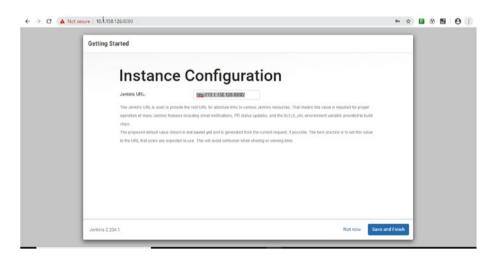


Figure 9-15. Jenkins first-time login configuration

**Step 13:** Click the Start using Jenkins button to complete installation, as shown in Figure 9-16.

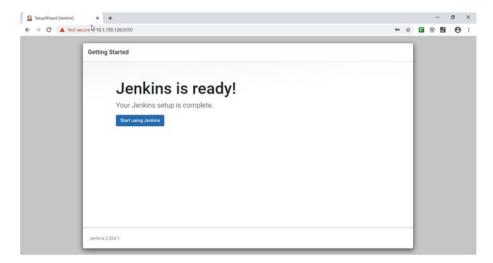


Figure 9-16. Jenkins first-time login configuration

You will see the screen for the Jenkins console, as shown in Figure 9-17.

Deshboard (/enkins)     X	+			-	σ	×
← → C (① Not secure   1	0.1.150.126.8080		* 6	0	Θ	:
🏀 Jenkins			1 Qsearch Ø	jenkins	log	out
Jenkins >				PAR &	/TO REFR	150
🚔 New Item				200	d descri	otion
4 People		Welcome to Jenkins!				
Build History	Þ	Please create new jobs to get started.				
Manage Jenkins My Views	-					
Open Blue Ocean						
条 Credentiais						
State Resources						
New View						
Build Queue	-					
No builds in the queue.						
Build Executor Status	-					
1 Idle 2 Idle						

Figure 9-17. Jenkins console

## **Terraform Open Source Installation**

We will start with installing Terraform open source, which will be used to compose an Infrastructure as Code module for the containerized infrastructure on AWS. We will use our master node (10.1.150.126) server to install Terraform.

**Step 1:** Log in to the master node as a root user and create a subdirectory named terraform under /home/Prometheus. Navigate into the directory by executing the following command, as shown in Figure 9-18:

- \$ cd /home/prometheus
- \$ mkdir terraform
- \$ cd terraform

```
[root@devops0087 /]#[cd /home/prometheus/
[root@devops0087 prometheus]# mkdir terraform
```

```
    toxtEderops0007/home/prometheus/teruform
    [root8derops0087 pgometheus]# cd terraform/
    [root8derops0087 terraform]#
    [
```

Figure 9-18. Terraform installation directory creation

**Step 2:** Execute the following command to download the Terraform package and unzip it, as shown in Figure 9-19:

```
$ wget https://releases.hashicorp.com/terraform/0.11.11/
terraform_0.11.11_linux_amd64.zip
```

2019-12-23 19:32:32 (17.7 MB/s) - 'ternaform\_0.11.11\_linux\_amd64.zip' saved [20971661/20971661]

### Figure 9-19. Terraform installation package download

a

**Step 3:** Verify the zip file has been successfully downloaded by executing the following command, as shown in Figure 9-20:

\$ ls -ltr

```
[root@devops0087 terraform]# ls -ltr
total 245728
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 20971661 Dec 15 2018 terraform_0.11.11_linux_amd64.zip
```

Figure 9-20. Terraform installation package download verification

**Step 4:** Unzip the Terraform package by executing the following command, as shown in Figure 9-21:

\$ unzip terraform\_0.11.11\_linux\_amd64.zip

```
[root@devops0087 terraform]# unzip terraform_0.11.11_linux_amd64.zip
Archive: terraform_0]11.11_linux_amd64.zip
```

### Figure 9-21. Unzip Terraform installation package

**Step 5:** Remove the zip file by executing the following inline command, as shown in Figure 9-22:

```
$ rm -rf terraform_0.11.11_linux_amd64.zip
$ ll
```

```
[root@devops0087 terraform]# 11
total 49508
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 50695264 Nov 19 03:44 terraform
```

### Figure 9-22. Delete Terraform zip package

**Step 6:** Add the Terraform file path to the Linux PATH variable, as shown in Figure 9-23.

```
$ export PATH="$PATH:/home/prometheus/terraform"
$ echo $PATH
```

[root@devops0087 terraform]# export PATH="\$PATH:/home/prometheus/terraform" root@devops0087 terrkform]# echo SPATH /usr/local/sbin:/usr/local/bin:/usr/bin:/usr/bin:/usr/java/jre-vmsare/bin:/root/bin:/usr/local/go/bin:/root/work/bin /home/prometheus/terraform root@devops0087 terraform]#

### Figure 9-23. Update and verify PATH variable

**Step 7:** Update the bash.rc file by executing the following command, and append export PATH="\$PATH:/home/prometheus/terraform to the end of the file. Save and quit the file.

```
$ vi ~/.bashrc
# .bashrc
# User specific aliases and functions
alias rm='rm -i'
alias cp='cp -i'
alias mv='mv -i'
# Source global definitions
if [ -f /etc/bashrc ]; then
. /etc/bashrc
fi
export PATH="$PATH:/home/prometheus/terraform"
```

**Step 8:** Verify the updated content by executing the following command, as shown in Figure 9-24:

\$ cat ~/.bashrc

Figure 9-24. Verify bashrc file update

**Step 9:** Validate successful Terraform installation by executing the following command, as shown in Figure 9-25:

Figure 9-25. Verify Terraform installation

## **AWS IAM authenticator Installation**

Now we will install AWS IAM authenticator, which will use AWS IAM credentials to authenticate to a Kubernetes cluster. If you are an administrator running a Kubernetes cluster on AWS, you already have an account to manage AWS IAM credentials so as to provision and update the cluster. By using AWS IAM Authenticator for Kubernetes, you can avoid having to manage a separate credential for Kubernetes access. AWS IAM also provides a number of nice properties, such as an out-of-band audit trail (via CloudTrail) and 2FA/MFA enforcement. We will use our Master Node (10.1.150.126) server to install aws-iam-authenticator.

**Step 1:** Navigate to the /home/prometheus/terraform directory and execute the following command, as shown in Figure 9-26:

\$curl -o aws-iam-authenticator https://amazon-eks.s3-us-west-2.
amazonaws.com/1.14.6/2019-08-22/bin/linux/amd64/aws-iamauthenticator

 curl -o āws-iam-authenticator https://amazon-eks.s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/1.14.6/2019-08-22/bin/linux/amd64/aws-iam

 uthenticator

 % Total
 % Received % Xferd

 Average Speed
 Time

 Time
 Time

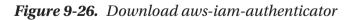
 Olad
 Upload

 Total
 % not 17.7M

 00
 1233k
 0:00:14

 0:00:14
 -:-:- 

 4108k



**Step 2:** Once aws-iam-authenticator is downloaded, rename it as iam-authenticator-aws by executing the following command:

```
$ mv aws-iam-authenticator iam-authenticator-aws
```

**Step 3:** Now apply execute permissions on the iam-authenticatoraws executable by executing the following inline command:

```
$ chmod 0777 iam-authenticator-aws
```

## **Jenkins and Terraform Integration**

Let's now integrate Jenkins and Terraform. This will set up the base for our CI/CD pipeline, which will have the automation logic for enabling container monitoring while deploying the container infrastructure on AWS. We will configure a Jenkins node on the same server where we have configured Terraform.

**Step 1:** Navigate to the /home directory and create a sub-directory called Jenkins\_node. Change permission of directory to 700 permission using chmod command so that the root user can only perform read, write, and execute operations on it by executing the following commands. The Jenkins\_node directory will be used by the Jenkins node to connect and execute the command.

- \$ cd /home
- \$ mkdir jenkins\_node
- \$ chmod 700 jenkins\_node

Step 2: Navigate to the following URL to access Jenkins. Use your admin password set up in previous steps. Navigate to Manage Jenkins ➤ Manage Nodes ➤ New Node.

URL: http://Master-Node-IP:8080; e.g., http://10.1.150.126:8080

**Step 3:** Fill in the form as per the following values:

**Root:** Select directory as jenkins\_node.

Name: Mention any name you like.

**Remote Root Directory:** Path of the Jenkins\_node folder we created; e.g., /home/jenkins\_node

Label: Mention label as Kubernetes\_Master.

Usage: Select "Use this node as much as possible."

Launch Method: Select "Launch agents via SSH."

**Host:** Mention Kubernetes master node IP address (in our case, 10.1.150.126).

Credential: Click Add button and choose "Jenkins."

Choose Kind as "Username with password" and then fill Username as "root." Password is the root user password of the Kubernetes master node. Also fill in the ID and Description fields. Click the Add button and select the credential, as shown in Figures 9-27 and 9-28.

**Host Key Verification Strategy:** Choose the "Nonverifying Verification Strategy" option, as we are connecting a Jenkins node by giving a username and password, not by SSH keys, to simplify the Jenkins node setup. If you want to connect the Jenkins node with an SSH key please follow the following link.<sup>2</sup>

**Availability:** Choose "Keep this agent online as much as possible."

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>https://support.cloudbees.com/hc/en-us/articles/222978868-How-to-Connect-to-Remote-SSH-Agents-

Add	Credentials	3						
Domain	Global crede	entials (unrestricted)						
nd	Username with password							
	Scope	Global (Jenkins, nodes, items, all child items, etc)	٣					
	Username	root						
	Password							
	ID							
	Description							

Figure 9-27. Setting up Jenkins node

Jenkins > Nodes > Kubernetes_Master	1	
A Back to List	Name	Kubernetes_Master
Status	Description	
S Delete Agent		
💥 Configure	# of executors	1
Build History	Remote root directory	/ /home/jenkins_node
E Load Statistics	Labels	
Script Console	20000	Kubernetes_Master
Log	Usage	Use this node as much as possible
System Information	Launch method	Launch agent agents via SSH
S Disconnect		Host 10.1.150.126
D. H. F	_	
Build Executor Status	Г	Credentials root/****** (kubernetes-master) * 🛁 Add 👻
1 Idle		Host Key Verification Strategy Non verifying Verification Strategy

### Figure 9-28. Setting up Jenkins node

Step 4: Click on the Save button to proceed.

**Step 5:** Verify the agent has been configured successfully by reviewing the Jenkins console status, as shown in Figure 9-29.

S	Name ↓	Architecture	Clock Difference	Free Disk Space	Free Swap Space	Free Temp Space	Response Time	
	Kubernetes_Master	Linux (amd64)	In sync	20.87 GB	<b>Q</b> 0 B	20.87 GB	20ms	- <u>A</u>
	master	Linux (amd64)	In sync	20.87 GB	<b>0</b> 0B	20.87 GB	0ms	\$
	Data obtained	36 min	36 min	36 min	36 min	36 min	36 min	
							Refresh	status

Figure 9-29. Verifying Jenkins node

## Jenkins and Terraform Integration

Now we will create the Jenkins Pipeline CI-CD-Kube-Sysdig to automate the inline process, as follows:

Code Clone: Clone the sock-shop code from GitHub.

**Create Cluster:** Create a Kubernetes cluster EKS on AWS by Terraform.

Deploy Sysdig Agent: Deploy a Sysdig agent on EKS.

**Deploy Application:** Deploy the Sock Shop application on EKS.

**Step 1:** Navigate to the following URL to access Jenkins. Use your admin password set up in previous steps. Click on "New Item," as shown in Figure 9-30.

URL: http://Master-Node-IP:8080; e.g., http://10.1.150.126:8080



Figure 9-30. Creating Jenkins ipeline

**Step 2:** Fill the form by making the item name CI-CD-Kube-Sysdig. Choose "Pipeline," as we are using pipeline as code in Jenkins to automate the previously defined process, then click the OK button, as shown in Figure 9-31. Jenkins provides capability of modeling pipelines "as code" where Pipeline definition is written as text or script file (called a Jenkinsfile). This allows pipeline definition to be stored & managed using Version control system.



Figure 9-31. Creating Jenkins pipeline

**Step 3:** Click on "Pipeline," and it will display a script box where we will compose our Jenkins script, as shown in Figure 9-32.

Definition	Pipeline script	•
	Script 1	try sample Pipeline 🔻
	Use Groovy Sandbox Pipeline. Syntax	

### Figure 9-32. Composing Jenkins script

**Step 4:** To create an EKS cluster, we will use the Terraform code. The Terraform code does the following tasks:

- Creates an AWS IAM role with the name \${var. cluster-name}-eks-cluster-role (where var. cluster-name is a defined variable that takes input from the user for the name of the cluster to be created) and attaches policies to the IAM role created.
- Security group rules are created to allow the API access to the cluster and defines rules to access cluster nodes from workers and vice versa,
- EKS cluster is deployed by the code with the user input name of the cluster. The IAM role created is attached to the cluster, the version of Kubernetes is provided with a default value, and the end user can opt for a different available version of EKS for the deployment.

- EKS worker nodes are configured by passing user data to the launch configuration, while the worker nodes are created by using auto-scaling of AWS to ensure availability of the nodes at all times.
- Security group rules are created for the worker node to allow it to reach out to the EKS cluster and to allow SSH login to the instances.

To deploy the sysdig agent, we will leverage the shell script sysdig\_ agent to create the namespace's cluster role binding secrets, which will be leveraged by the Sysdig agent to monitor the cluster. Then it deploys the Sysdig agent config map and DaemonSet on the cluster.

Both the script and other Terraform modules are created in the /home/ EKS\_CLUSTER folder.

Clone the EKS\_CLUSTER files by executing the following commands from the /home directory of the master node (10.1.150.126):

- \$ cd /home
- \$ git clone https://github.com/dryice-devops/EKS\_CLUSTER.git

You will see a sub-directory under the /home directory named EKS\_ CLUSTER. Navigate into that to view the file named kubernetes\_deploy.sh. This file requires four parameters, as follows:

- cluster-name; e.g., Prometheus
- aws-region; e.g., us-east-1
- node-instance-type; e.g., t3.xlarge
- KeyName; e.g., awx

\$ cd EKS\_CLUSTER

Create an agent-files directory in the /home directory:

\$ cd /home
\$ mkdir agent-files

Create the inline files with the same contents as we created earlier (manual process to deploy Sysdig agent):

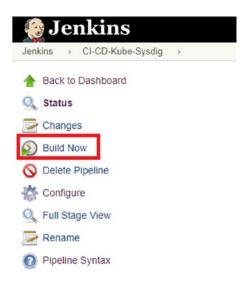
```
sysdig-agent-clusterrole.yaml, sysdig-agent-configmap.yaml and
sysdig-agent-daemonset-v2.yaml
```

**Step 5:** Copy the contents of the Jenkins file into the EKS\_CLUSTER folder and paste it into the script box. Then, click the Save button, as shown in Figure 9-33.

Definition	Pipeline se	cript	
	Script	<pre>1 - node ('master') { 2 3 - node('Kubernetes_Master'){ 4 5 - stage('Code Clone - GIT') { 6 - try( 7 8 git 'https://github.com/dryice-devops/microservice 9 } 10 - catch(e){ 11 12 catch(e){ 13 catch(e){ 14 15 } 16 17 4</pre>	try sample Pipeline ss-demo.git* We Clone - GIT Exception ********
	Pipeline Sy	Use Groovy Sandbox <u>intax</u>	

Figure 9-33. Saving Jenkins script

Step 6: Execute the Jenkins job by clicking on "Build Now" (Figure 9-34).



### Figure 9-34. Executing Jenkins script

**Step 7:** Once the job has been executed successfully, the following build history will show. If it runs fine, the build number will be blue; if not, it will be red. This history will also show the stages under Stage View. To view logs, click on the build number, as shown in Figure 9-35. Click on Console Output.

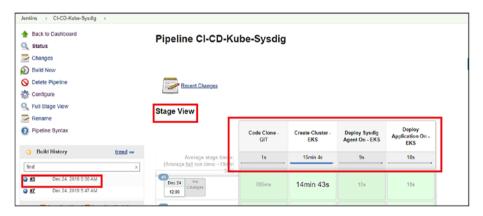


Figure 9-35. Reviewing Jenkins logs

In the log console, please scroll three-fourths of the way down the screen to see the newly created EKS node's details, as shown in Figure 9-36.

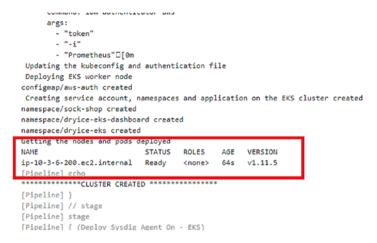
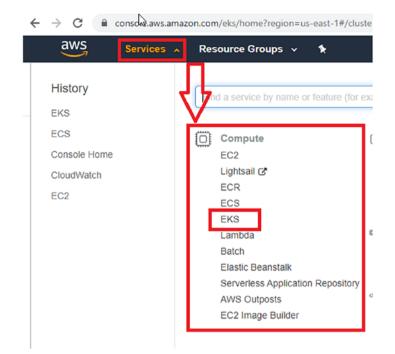


Figure 9-36. Reviewing Jenkins logs

**Step 8:** Navigate to your AWS account console and click on "Services," then select "EKS" under the Compute category, as shown in Figure 9-37.



### Figure 9-37. Reviewing the AWS console

You will see the EKS cluster Prometheus is in an active state, as shown in Figure 9-38, the same that we created through Jenkins and Terraform.

imazon ECS Clusters	Clusters (1)		C Delete Create cluster
ask definitions	Cluster name	Kubernetes version	Status
kmazon EKS Clusters	O Prometheus	1.14	Ø ACTIVE
mazon ECR epositories			

Figure 9-38. Reviewing AWS console

Now, navigate back to Services and click "EC2" under the Compute category, as shown in Figure 9-39.

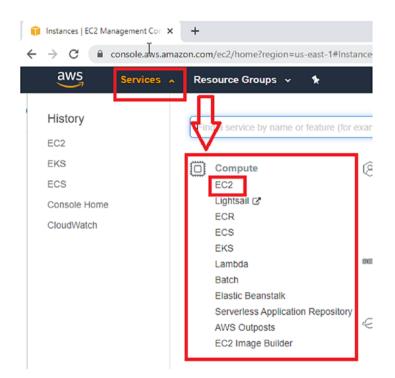
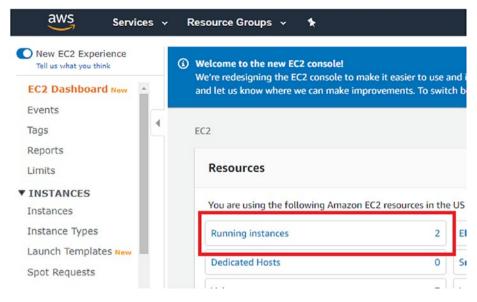


Figure 9-39. Reviewing AWS console

Click on "Running Instances" under the Resource category, as shown in Figure 9-40.



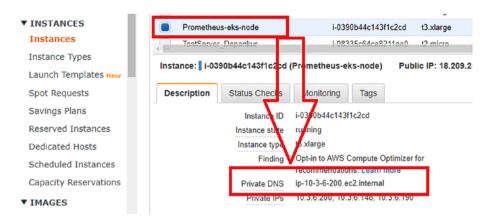
### Figure 9-40. Reviewing AWS console

You will see the EC2 instance name as Prometheus-eks-node. Select this, as shown in Figure 9-41.

aws Serv	ices 🗸	R	esource Groups 👻 🛠			Ð			Su	ipport +
New EC2 Experience Tall us what you think		Laur	ch Instance 👻 Connect /	Actions ~					Δ.	e e
EC2 Dashboard New		Q	Filter by tags and attributes or search by	by keyword				ØK	< 1 to 7	of7 >
Events Tags	Ĩ		Name	▲ Instance ID ×	Instance Type ~ A	vailability Zone 👻 🛛	nstance State v	Status Checks 👻	Alarm Sta	itus
Reports			Abhijest Terraform documents	i-033a404e10232df89	t2.small us	s-east-1a 🤇	stopped		None	6
			ECS Instance - EC2ContainerService	e i-058d34c8f37e34453	t2.micro ut	s-east-1a	running	2/2 checks	None	>>
Umits			Promotheus eks node	i 00h3dh#Ca2faacaZ	Rixbron	e east ta	tominated		Nese	>
▼ INSTANCES			Prometheus-eks-node	i-0390b44c143f1c2cd	t3.xlarge ut	s-east-1b	running	2/2 checks	None	5
Instances		-	TestServer Depankur	i-08335c64ca8211ae0	12.micro ut	s-east-1a	stopped		None	2

Figure 9-41. Reviewing AWS console

In the Description tab, you will get the private DNS. It is same as we have seen in the Jenkins logs, as shown in Figure 9-42.



### Figure 9-42. Reviewing AWS console

**Step 9:** Now, let's navigate to the Sysdig console and verify that our EKS cluster has been added under Monitoring. Navigate to Sysdig at https://sysdig.com/ and log in with your credentials.

Navigate to Explore ➤ Hosts & Containers, and then select "Overview by Container" under the Hosts & Container category. You will see Figure 9-43.

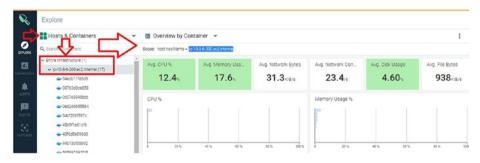


Figure 9-43. Reviewing the Sysdig console

Now, to verify that the Sock Shop application deployed, click Explore ➤ Hosts & Containers ➤ Select Container Limits under the Hosts & Containers category.

Hover over the graph of CPU Shares Used, as shown in Figure 9-44.

Hosts & Containers	•	🖪 Container Limits 👻
Q Search environment		Scope: host.hostName = 1p-10-3-6-200.ec2.internal'
✓ Entire Infrastructure (1)	-	CPU Shares Used
✓ ip-10-3-5-200.ec2.internal (17)		CPU Shales Used
		2
➡ 09763d3ce858	- 1	100 %
	- 1	50 %-
	- 1	
4 34bf206f597c		02:30 02:45 03 PM 03:15
43b9f1a01cf6	- 1	
43f6d5e896d3	- 1	Memory Limit Used

Figure 9-44. Reviewing the Sysdig console

You will see the Sock Shop container's name, as shown in Figure 9-45.

			-		1000000	Sec. 1				
				Dec 24th 1:07:00 pm Sate of cpu shares used becant segmented by container name	plan!					
\$	Explore			<ul> <li>k8s_rabbitme_rabbitme-77.4977474www2k_sock</li></ul>						
	Hosts & Containers	-	-	≥ k8s_carts-db_carts-db-d6475f9b8-aftyf_sock-sho 71.9 % ≥ k8s_orders_orders-78f5667b66-wfkpq_sock-shop 25.3 %					1	1
2	Q, Search environment		Sce	<ul> <li>kős., parts., carts. 660f171440-ih-kbg., paok. elkop., 25. 23.8 %,</li> <li>kös., shipping., shipping.66d73049604/v677, paockis</li></ul>						
	✓ Entire infrastructure (1)	-		KBs_queue-master_queue-master-owykostrowyko_119.4 %		CPU Quota Used				
	✓ ip-10-3-6-200 ec2 internal (17)	_	۲	DESELECT ALL		CFO QUOLA OSEO				
	🛶 04edb11fc6d3				- 1					
	→ 09763c3c+b58			100 N	-	100.%			1.0	
	- 0c07e30456de			12-45 12/24 01 02:00 PM 01:00 01:00	-	* +2.45	01.054	0116	 ~	_
	Dec2dd655564		1.1	me Rate droup Average Metric: coulshares used percent		12.45	01.00		130	
	430911a01c16		N	emory Limit Used		Memory Limit				
	🛶 43968 5e09683									
	🛶 44e13ef36b92			NO W				-	 _	_
	➡ 565897392f45				_				 _	_
	🛶 \$#4268fd9e1e			0 12-45 D1 PM 01:15 01:50	_	0 12-15	OF PM	01.15	 1.50	
		*								

Figure 9-45. Reviewing Sysdig Console

Click on Explore ➤ Daemon Sets ➤ Over by Service under Services. You should see something similar to Figure 9-46.

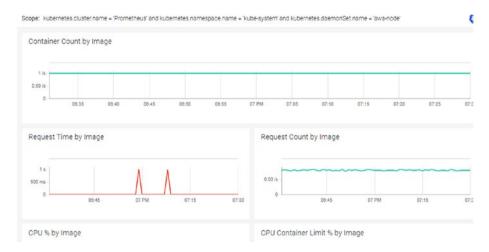


Figure 9-46. Reviewing the Sysdig console

## Summary

In this chapter, we have provided hands-on steps for using an Infrastructure as Code solution, Terraform; and a CI/CD solution, Jenkins, to automate the deployment of container infrastructure, then enabling monitoring for and deploying a containerized application.

# Index

## **A**, **B**

Alert Manager alter view, 82, 83 config map list/delete, 78, 79 deployment creation, 70-72 pods, 79 Prometheus integration, 78 service creation, 76–79 setup overview. 70 task flows overview, 76, 77 verification, 80, 81 YAML file walkthrough, 71-73 Automation (monitoring) AWS environment namespace, 275 IaC (see Infrastructure as Code (IaC)) Ienkins installation, 276-282 Kubernetes namespace clean-up, 275 Terraform open source (see Terraform open source) Azure Monitor exporter application verification, 125, 126 Azure.yml file, 130 dashboard, 116 deployment, 125

DRYICEDEMoIAC workspace, 126 exporter configuration, 117 Go installation, 129 graph tab, 135 information and options, 121 inline commands, 132 Linux service, 133 log analysis workspace, 126, 127 metrics verification, 128 monitoring tab, 120, 121 namespace verification, 124 networking tab, 119 node count, 117, 118 node status graph, 134 Powershell module, 124 Prometheus console, 134 scale tab, 118 targets section, 130 verification, 122, 123, 133

## С

cAdvisor exporter config-map.yaml file, 110, 111 configuration, 112 CPU graph, 114 filesystem read graph, 113

<sup>©</sup> Navin Sabharwal, Piyush Pandey 2020

N. Sabharwal and P. Pandey, *Monitoring Microservices and Containerized Applications*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4842-6216-0

### INDEX

cAdvisor exporter (*cont*.) ICMP stats graph, 115 open connection graph, 115 Prometheus configuration, 111 verification, 112 Chroot system, 4 Containerized application deployment components, 193 easyTravel application ActiveGate installation, 208 API token generation, 196, 198 cr.yml file, 201, 203, 205-207 Dynatrace entities, 195 integration, 211 master server, 195 monitoring configuration file, 209, 210 oneagent operator, 195 PaaS token generation, 199 pod list, 193 service list, 194 easytravel.yaml file, 192 environment ID, 204 GitHub code, 191 Kubernetes namespace creation, 192 OneAgent installation, 194 Containers, 1 cloud computing, 2 Docker and Kubernetes (see Docker and Kubernetes)

environments, 2 meaning, 3 modernization empowers companies, 1 monitoring ecosystem, 15 technology, 4, 5 testing, and deploying application, 4 *vs* VM comparison, 3

## D

Dashboard solution, (see Reporting/ dashboard solutions) Docker and Kubernetes architecture, 7, 8 CE edition setup, 23 community edition, 25 installation, 26 Redhat systems, 25 Redhat VMs, 24 repo configuration, 25 validation. 26 Kubernetes (see Kubernetes services) physical and virtual infrastructure, 6 management interfaces, 8 namespaces, 6 Dynatrace, 19, 183 containerized application (see Containerized application deployment)

container monitoring application components, 191 architecture, 186 components and objects, 186 easy travel architecture, 191 evaluation version, 187 home page, 189 region selection, 188 tab navigation, 190 welcome page, 189 key capabilities, 184 metrics (see Metrics) SaaS architecture, 185 Smartscape topology application, 228-231 transactions/services, 230-233

## E, F

Elastic Kubernetes Services (EKS) cli tool configuration, 253 cluster button creation, 247 cluster kernel version, 254 enable public access, 249 IAM role creation, 242 inbound/outbound security, 246 key pair creation, 246 logging options, 249 node group creation, 251, 252 permissions button, 243 review button, 244 role button, 244 security group creation, 245 security group selection, 248 tag values (optional), 250 validation, 250 VPC and subnet creation, 248 extended Berkeley Packet Filter (Ebpf), 239

## G

Grafana visualization alerting engine cloning file, 176 components, 175 config-map.yaml file, 174 dashboard navigation, 181, 182 data source configuration, 179, 180 deployment flow, 173 flowchart, 173 in-line commands, 174 installation, 177, 178 login page, 179 pod status verification, 175 temporary password fetch, 178 values.yaml file, 176, 177 dashboards, 172 data sources, 171 panels, 171 query editor, 172

## Η

Heapster, 19

### INDEX

### 

Infrastructure as Code (IaC) advantage, 272 CI/CD pipeline leveraging, 274 containerized application components, 273 tools, 272 working process, 272 Infrastructure monitoring, 85 exporter Azure Monitor, 116–135 cAdvisor, 110-115 node exporter, 99–111 **Kubernetes** control plane, 87 infrastructure service roles. 88 metrics, 88 labels Apiserver request duration, 91 Helm version, 93, 94 HTTP request, 90 PromQL, 89 Tiller installation, 93-98 parameters key layers, 86 node availability, 87 node health, 87 service discovery, 86

### J

Ienkins AWS console, 297-299 execution process, 295 inline process, 290 node verification, 289-292 parameters, 293 pipeline creation, 290, 291 reviewing logs, 295, 296 save button, 294 script box, 291 source code tasks, 292 Sysdig console, 300-302 Jenkins 9v2.204 admin user setup, 281 console, 279, 282 directory creation, 276 Docker image build, 277 finish option, 281 first-time login configuration, 280, 282 installation, 276, 278 password, 279 plugins selection, 280 verification, 277, 278

## Κ

Kubernetes services architecture, 9 components, 9 control plane, 87

infrastructure service roles, 88 master node. 10 metrics. 88 microservices architecture, 12-15 installation, RHIEL 7 (see RHIEL 7) setup, 27 worker node, 11, 12 /etc/hosts file entry, 33 kubectl get nodes command, 36 repositories, 35 SELinux and firewall policy, 34 target node, 34 Kube-state-metrics deployment status graph, 138 git verification, 136 inline command, 136 metrics service status, 137 service verification, 138

## L

Lab environment setup, 21–23 LinuX Containers (LXC), 5

## Μ

Metrics analyze nodes button, 214 appication monitoring, 222 application detection rule, 223 cluster status, 213

container metrics, 220 Docker dashboard view, 221, 222 easyTravel application onboarding, 223-227 home dashboard, 213 host view, 215-217 image name view, 219 navigation menu, 221 process details, 220 processes and Containers view, 218 Microservices architecture, 12-15 Microservices-based applications, 17 Monitoring ecosystem components, 18 metrics explosion view, 17 nuances, 16 requirements, 15 toolset, 18, 19 Monolithic vs microservice application, 13

## **N**, **O**

Node exporter configuration, 101 CPU collector, 104–106 diskstats collector, 107 filesystem collector, 106 graph node, 104 hardware and OS metrics, 99, 100 Meminfo collector, 108, 109 Netdev collector, 108, 109

### INDEX

Node exporter (*cont*.) Prometheus console, 103 query, 103 section and details, 101 Uname collector, 110, 111 verification, 101, 102

## P, Q

Prometheus monitoring tool, 43 alert manager (see Alert Manager) alert manager architecture, 44-46 infrastructure management services, 43 **Kubernetes** objects building blocks, 47 ClusterRoleBinding, 53–55 ClusterRole Section, 51–53 config map, 55-60 deployment, 60-65 deployment flow, 49 namespace creation, 50, 51 services, 65-69 YAML file, 47 multi-dimensional data models. 44 Prometheus Query Language (PromQL), 44 aggregation operations average value output, 160 identified labeled data, 158, 159

memory bytes, 156-158 operation details, 156 output, 161 hypothetical representation, 142, 143 logical/arithmetic operators consumption, 163 data comparison, 162 megabytes, 163-165 output screen, 165 query output, 166 timestamp function, 166 overview, 141 return range selection past/historical data, 153-155 vector, 151-153 selector (see Selectors) time-series data, 141, 142

## R

Reporting/dashboard solutions dashboard solutions, 170, 171 data source, 169 Grafana (*see* Grafana visualization) RHEL 7 /etc/hosts file entry, 30 firewall policy, 28, 29 inbound TCP ports, 28 Kubeadm installation, 30, 31 network deployment, 32 nodes and namespaces, 31–33

#### INDEX

repositories, 30 SELinux policy, 27, 28 Role-based access and control (RBAC), 50, 93

## S

Selectors data fetched file, 148 filter labels, 145–149 instant vector, 148 metric selection, 144, 145 multiple labels, 149, 150 return values, 146 Sock shop application, 256–258 Sysdig monitoring application, 235 agent installation, 254-256 application performance metrices, 264, 265 architecture components, 238, 239 container vision, 238 deployment view, 264 Doctor application metrics, 263, 264 eBPF, 239 EKS (see Elastic Kubernetes Services (EKS)) Falco, 238 functional architecture, 237

golden signals, 268, 269 HTTP monitor, 265 IVM monitor, 265 key features, 236 meaning, 170 metrics, 258-260 navigation, 260-262 sock shop application, 256-258 topology view, 266, 267 trial license setup account password setup, 241 evaluation version, 240 **Kubernetes** integration key, 241 Sysdig monitoring data, 19

## T, U, V, W, X, Y, Z

Terraform open source AWS IAM credentials, 286, 287 bash.rc file, 285 directory creation, 283 installation, 283 Jenkin (*see* Jenkins) package download verification, 283 PATH variable, 285 Unzip package, 284 zip package, 284